Threshold 1990


# Table of contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1  The objective: levels of specificity</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2  The objective: general characterisation</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3  The objective: extended characterisation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4  The objective: components of the specification</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5  Language functions</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  General notions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7  Specific notions</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8  Verbal exchange patterns</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9  Dealing with texts: reading and listening</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Writing</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Sociocultural competence</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Compensation strategies</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Learning to learn</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Degree of skill</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>APPENDICES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Pronunciation and intonation</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Grammatical summary</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Word index</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Subject index</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preface

*Threshold* is the latest, thoroughly revised, extended, corrected and reset version of *The Threshold Level* by Dr. J. A. van Ek, first published by the Council of Europe in 1975 as part of a project to investigate the feasibility of a unit/credit system for adult language learning in Europe. The Project Group set out to develop conceptual and planning instruments to assist teachers and course planners to analyse the needs of the learners towards whom they had responsibilities and to set, consciously and explicitly, appropriate learning objectives.

Learning objectives will, in principle, be as diverse as the learners and the lives they lead. However, large-scale educational systems have to base their provision on learners’ common needs. By far the largest single group of language learners everywhere consists of people who want to prepare themselves to communicate socially with people from other countries, exchanging information and opinions on everyday matters in a relatively straightforward way, and to conduct the necessary business of everyday living when abroad with a reasonable degree of independence. *The Threshold Level* was the first attempt to set out in systematic detail just what such an objective implies in terms of the situations the learners might have to deal with and what they should be able to do by means of language in those situations – what feelings and ideas they would need to express, or ask about, or argue about, and in general conduct personal relations in daily life. It then made recommendations as to the language needed to express functions and notions concerned, whether through the set formulae in which every language abounds, or by the freer use of words in grammatical constructions. What was revolutionary for language teaching, however, was that the apparatus of sentence formation, the grammar and lexicon, were not seen as ends in themselves, but as means to communicative ends. Communicative effectiveness becomes the criterion by which the learners’ success (and that of the teaching programme) is to be judged, rather than the error-free performance of formal exercises. The effect was to ‘convert language teaching from structure-dominated scholastic sterility into a vital medium for the freer movement of people and ideas’ with an emphasis on the use of language in direct person-to-person encounters.

Since 1975, *The Threshold Level* has been used on a large scale by the designers of syllabuses of all kinds: for curricular reform, for examination development, for textbook writing and course design. Functional and notional categorisation has been fully assimilated into the established framework of language learning and teaching. The selection of situations and topics, with the associated specific notions, has stood the test of time reasonably well, as has the framework of
general notions and functions less closely tied to particular situations. Over the years, analogous descriptions have been published for Basque, Catalan, Danish, Dutch, Estonian, French, Friulian, Galician, German, Italian, Latvian, Lebanese, Lithuanian, Maltese, Norwegian, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish and Welsh. Those for Greek and Irish are approaching completion and work has started on Czech and Hungarian. It is most likely that others will follow. These versions have not been mere translations. In each case the priority objectives have necessarily taken account not only of the semantic categories obligatorily represented in the grammar of the language concerned, but also of the differences in the cultural concept. In addition, the researchers concerned have frequently contributed new ideas to the development of the basic model. The Threshold Level is not itself a syllabus but a statement of objectives. Users have invariably adapted it accordingly and have always felt free to use their own judgement, adding and subtracting categories and exponents as they have seen fit.

It was, however, apparent to the Project Group responsible for the Council of Europe Modern Languages Projects 4 and 12 that the existing model for the specification of objectives did not exhaust the objectives which language learners should set themselves. In 1979 it set up a working party to consider an overall model for the specification of language learning objectives more complex than those set out in the threshold level documents, taking into account the development of the individual as a communicator, learner, social subject and person. Working teams were set up, co-ordinated by the Project Adviser. One, co-ordinated by H. Holec, was concerned with the development of the learner as a communicator and as a learner. The second, co-ordinated by D. Coste, was concerned with the personal and social development of the learner. The papers produced were published by the Council of Europe in 1984, together with analytical summaries by the co-ordinators and a 'consolidated report' by the Project Adviser, as Towards a more comprehensive framework for the definition of language learning objectives. On the basis of these preliminary studies, J. A. van Ek was commissioned to organise the various elements into an overall model for the specification of language learning objectives, and to consider the nature and educational implications of each of its components. His study: Objectives for Foreign Language Learning was published by the Council of Europe in two volumes: Vol. I Scope (1986) and Vol. II Levels (1987). In Vol. I, Chapter 6, he presents a Framework for comprehensive foreign language learning objectives distinguishing the following components:

- communicative ability:
  - linguistic competence
  - sociolinguistic competence
  - discourse competence
Following the successful completion of Project 12 in 1987, the Council for Cultural Co-operation of the Council of Europe launched a further Project: Language learning for European citizenship. Among its priority themes in the area of language learning and teaching methodology was 'revising the original threshold level specification as applied to English to take account of developments in the 15 years since it was conceived as a first pioneering experiment'. A number of institutions concerned with the promotion of English as a foreign language: the British Council, the University of Cambridge Local Examinations Syndicate and BBC English expressed their readiness to support the work of revising and extending both The Threshold Level and Waystage. We should like to take this opportunity of thanking them warmly for this. Accordingly, the Council of Europe commissioned a thorough revision, which was undertaken in 1989–90 and published as Threshold Level 1990. This edition is closely based upon that publication, but the opportunity has been taken to make corrections and to improve the presentation.

We wish here to acknowledge our indebtedness to L. G. Alexander for his contributions to the original specification. It will, however, be seen that the present work is, echoing van Ek’s Introduction to the 1986 volume: 'one of the results of many years of intensive collaboration and genuine interaction with colleagues from several European countries brought together in the framework of successive modern language projects of the Council of Europe. The number of those who in some way or other, directly or indirectly, have contributed to our study is so large that we can only say to them, collectively, “Thank you all”.'

J. A. van Ek

J. L. M. Trim

Acknowledgement

The Council of Europe wishes to acknowledge the important financial contribution made to this work by the University of Cambridge Local Examinations Syndicate, BBC English and the British Council.
Introduction

1 Target Group

Spread all over the world, there are hundreds of millions of people for whom English is the key that may unlock the door of the space assigned to them by birth and upbringing. A command of this language will enable them to extend their mental horizons beyond almost any geographical or cultural limitations, and, if so desired, also physically to cross the threshold into the world outside. That, in fact, hundreds of millions are prepared to make an effort to this purpose has been shown by the success of the BBC's multi-media course *Follow Me!*, which in the late 1970s and early 1980s actually attracted such numbers.

It is for this target group that *Threshold Level 1990* has been developed. They will be genuine beginners or so-called 'false beginners' (i.e. those who have acquired some familiarity with the foreign language but feel they need a fresh start). They are interested in acquiring a general basic ability in English even though, individually, each of them may have their own specific needs and wishes and many of them may eventually want to go much further than this basic level. Finally, their motivation is assumed to be practical rather than academic.

2 Criteria

An objective designed for such numbers as referred to above has to be flexible enough to allow of a large variety of concretisations in accordance with the specific circumstances of different groups or individuals. It has to be suitable for utilisation in the design of courses for mass audiences as well as in the development of learning materials tailored to satisfy the needs of small groups or individuals. It has to provide for contacts with native speakers of English as well as with native speakers of other languages who use English as an international medium of communication. And, finally, it has to be manageable within a reasonable time by at least the large majority of those who are prepared to make a genuine effort.

An objective for a target group as large and varied as the one we have in mind is necessarily based on assumptions as to what communicative needs the members of this group are likely to have in common. It cannot, therefore, directly cater for such needs and interests as are shared by only a minority of this group, however large this minority
may be. At the same time, it would fall short of its purpose if it did not at least provide a framework in which any expansions required for such sub-groups might be harmoniously accommodated.

3 Adaptability

By way of exemplification we shall consider, in the present section, the relevance of Threshold Level 1990 to the needs of what is likely to be a substantial sub-group of the overall target population, namely those who will have to use the foreign language particularly for professional purposes. As a general objective Threshold Level 1990 does not specifically cater for the needs of this sub-group. Yet, the ability to use English for professional purposes is, first and foremost, the ability to use English. In using English for professional purposes, no less than for any other purpose, people will have to be able to ask questions and to provide information, to elicit opinions, views, preferences, and to express them, to refer to past, present and future events, to express reasons why and conditions under which something may come to pass and to understand others doing so, etc. Also, they will have to be familiar with certain social conventions and common assumptions inherent in manners of expression in the English language, and they will need to be aware of how cultural differences may be reflected in communicative behaviour. And then, of course, they will also need experience in coping with the inevitable occurrence of situations which overtax their linguistic or sociocultural resources. All these elements of communicative ability – and many more – are included in Threshold Level 1990. Collectively, they constitute the general basic ability which we have attempted to describe and specify in this objective. In our view, this ability is required by all those who wish to use English with a certain measure of confidence in a range of 'normal' communication situations, i.e. in situations for which it is never possible to predict exactly what one will need to be able to say or write and what one will be required to understand. In this respect, then, Threshold Level 1990 is also an appropriate objective for those who wish to be able to use English particularly for professional purposes. However, it has further potential. Through its comprehensive system of categorisation and the open-endedness of the various specifications it offers virtually unlimited possibilities for such expansions as may serve the purposes of particular sub-groups of the target population. Not only may the various categories be separately expanded, but several of them contain slots for the insertion of further (sets of) elements. Thus, for instance, on behalf of those who wish to learn English particularly for professional purposes, text types of a professional nature may be added to the reading component, the writing component may be
expanded as required, the topic specification may be supplemented with further topics of professional interest, and open-ended lists within the topics can be filled in accordance with the needs and interests of particular learner groups.

4 Flexibility

As was also claimed in the previous section, *Threshold Level 1990* has a high degree of internal flexibility. How this flexibility is to be exploited, depends to a large extent on the educational context in which the learning of the foreign language takes place and the effects that this learning is meant to produce. For the learning of a foreign language is an educational experience which may benefit the learners in several different ways. If undertaken as part of an overall educational programme, foreign language learning may, through the contacts it provides with another culture, play an essential role in widening the learners' horizon, in stimulating their awareness of the potential validity of different value systems, of different ways of organising, categorising and expressing experience, etc. If viewed in the perspective of permanent education, a foreign language course may equip the learners with skills and insights that will facilitate the subsequent expansion of their ability in the foreign language or the subsequent learning of one or more other foreign languages. If pursued in a social context, foreign language learning may contribute to the development of the learners' understanding of the complexities of personal interaction; it may prepare them to function more effectively in social contacts, not only in the foreign language but also in their native language, etc.

Many more of the potential benefits of foreign language learning are listed in van Ek, *Objectives for Foreign Language Learning, Vol. 1: Scope*, Strasbourg 1986. Which of these learning effects, and how many of them, are explicitly or implicitly aimed at in a foreign language course, depends on the educational context in which the course is offered and/or taken, as well as on the educational views of those who provide the course and/or of those who take it.

5 What is new in *Threshold Level 1990*

*Threshold Level 1990* is designed to fit into a wide variety of educational contexts and to suit a wide variety of learning aims. In this respect it corresponds to its predecessor, *The Threshold Level in a European unit/credit system for modern language learning by adults*, first published by the Council of Europe in 1975. The main difference is that now those
components of communicative ability which particularly allow it to be related to a wider educational context are identified and explicitly incorporated into the objective. Thus, *Threshold Level 1990* includes discourse strategies, a sociocultural component, compensation strategies, and a 'learning-to-learn' component. In addition, it contains numerous major and minor improvements in the specification of those categories which were already distinguished in the original *Threshold Level* as well as certain adjustments reflecting differences in assumptions as to foreign language needs in the 1990s as compared to the 1970s. Some of the improvements have been designed to make the specification more accessible. They include re-arrangements in the classification of the language functions, a re-designed grammatical summary and the provision of a subject index. Other changes are of a more fundamental nature, such as the explicit treatment of selected intonation patterns, the addition of two new categories of language functions, 'structuring discourse' and 'communication repair', and the introduction of several open-ended items in the list of specific notions.

Such changes and additions as distinguish *Threshold Level 1990* from its predecessor result from experiences gained in various applications of the original version and from the further development of insights into the nature of communicative ability and implications of this for educational practice. Much of this we owe to the rich literature bearing on 'communicative language learning and teaching' that has been produced in the last 15 years or so. As authors of a new threshold-level version we are particularly indebted to all those who, since the original version for English came out, have undertaken the development of parallel versions for other European languages. Based on the same model, each of these versions bears witness to the application of fresh insights to the specification of communicative objectives.

6 Learning load

*Threshold Level 1990* has more components than the old one and in some cases – particularly 'reading' and 'listening' – it requires more of the learners than its predecessor did. At first sight, then, it might seem as if it represents a heavier learning load. It is our assumption, however, that in practice this will not appear to be the case. The new components are largely concerned with the acquisition of strategies and the development of insights and awareness. Their incorporation will have a qualitative rather than a quantitative effect. It does not necessarily increase the number of learning items, but it will affect the presentation and practice of these items. It will involve, for instance, the selection of texts not only for (pragma-)linguistic relevance but also for sociocultural relevance or for relevance with regard to 'coping strategies'. It will also mean that learning tasks will have to be made
transparent enough for the learner to understand how the performance of these tasks may contribute to the achievement of his or her aims. The promotion of the development of various types of insight and awareness will require the introduction of teaching/learning procedures which are not yet commonly found in language courses. One such procedure is described in the recently developed 'Stage 3 level' brochure of the International Certificate Conference. It concerns the development of sociolinguistic awareness and appropriate strategies and consists of three steps:

- exposure to a variety of situations in which such features as participant roles, setting, communicative goal, etc., significantly influence the choice of language-forms;
- stimulating awareness of this influence through observation, reflection, discussion;
- involving the learner in similar situations for active practice.

The introduction of such a procedure into a language course, we assume, will make learning more effective rather than more demanding.

No more do higher demands with regard to 'reading' and 'listening' necessarily increase the actual overall learning load. On the contrary: it is increasingly recognised that frequent exposure to texts – or the intensive practice of 'receptive skills' – will contribute substantially to the efficient development of productive ability as well. In fact, what we propose in Threshold Level 1990 is much more in agreement with current educational practice than the more modest requirements of the original Threshold Level.

The increased flexibility of Threshold Level 1990 makes an assessment of the learning load in terms of 'an average number of learning hours' even more difficult than it used to be. This is particularly due to the inclusion of a fairly large number of open-ended items in the list of topic-related specific notions and to the comparatively low level of specificity in the description of such 'new' components as sociocultural competence, compensation strategies and learning-to-learn. In these cases various concretisations are possible in accordance with the needs and interests of individual learners or groups of learners. The nature of these concretisations may very well affect the weight of the overall learning load and consequently the number of hours required to master it. If pressed to give a general indication,

---

nevertheless, we can only say, at this stage, that we assume the learning load for Threshold Level 1990 to be similar to that for its predecessor and that there is some evidence that, with adequate guidance, absolute beginners need an average of 375 learning hours – including independent work – to reach the older objectives.

7 Waystage 1990

The estimated learning load for Threshold Level 1990 may appear to be very formidable indeed, particularly to learners with only little educational experience. Yet, it is our aim to encourage people to learn a foreign language rather than to deter them from doing so. Also, we would not wish to maintain that the achievement of a lower level of communicative ability than Threshold Level 1990 could not be very much worthwhile to learners. We therefore provide, in a separate publication, a less demanding objective under the name of Waystage 1990. Waystage 1990 has been derived from Threshold Level 1990, is based on the same model and contains the same components. It is a coherent objective in its own right, offering the learners a level of ability that may serve many of their language purposes without, however, enabling them to operate in the foreign language with the same measure of freedom as Threshold Level 1990 is meant to provide. The learning load of Waystage 1990 is estimated to be about half of that required for Threshold Level 1990. For beginning learners who are unable or unwilling to commit themselves right from the start to the expenditure of time and energy required for the higher objective, Waystage 1990 may be an acceptable alternative. And it is not unreasonable to expect that many of those who have first reached the lower objective may be encouraged by the experience of successful learning to undertake the further learning effort that will take them to Threshold Level 1990.
1 The objective: levels of specificity

The objective will be formulated in three stages, or at three levels of specificity:

1 General characterisation
2 Extended characterisation
3 Specification

The general characterisation is meant as an overall description for rapid orientation.

The extended characterisation is a detailed description for all potentially interested parties, including the learners themselves.

The specification is a fully detailed description meant for course designers, curriculum planners, test constructors, etc.
2 The objective: general characterisation

- As temporary visitors to, or temporary residents in, a country where the foreign language is used for general communication purposes,
- when dealing with foreign visitors or temporary residents in their own country, using English as a common means of communication,
- in contact with native or with non-native speakers of the foreign language in another foreign country,
- when encountering written or spoken texts in the foreign language, the learners will be able to use the foreign language in such a way as to cope with the (principally linguistic) requirements of those situations they are most likely to find themselves in, particularly:
  - situations, including practical transactions in everyday life, requiring a largely predictable language use;
  - situations involving personal interaction, enabling the learners to establish and to maintain social contacts, including those made in business contacts;
  - situations involving indirect communication, requiring the understanding of the gist and/or relevant details of written or spoken texts.
3 The objective: extended characterisation

1 Learners will be able to cope with transactional situations of everyday life requiring a largely predictable use of language.

1.1 Contacts with officials
In all contacts with officials learners should be able to ask for repetition, clarification and explanation, etc. of any information, questions or documents not understood, and should be able to ask for the services of an interpreter and/or legal adviser in case of serious difficulty (cf. Chapter 12).

1.1.1 Immigration
Learners should be able to understand and complete necessary documentation.
Learners should be able to understand and answer questions concerning:
- personal identification (cf. Chapter 7, 1.1-1.12)
- the duration and purpose of their visit

1.1.2 Customs officers
Learners should be able to understand and complete necessary documentation.
Learners should be able to understand and answer necessary questions concerning:
- whether they have dutiable items to declare
- the contents of their luggage and the value of items
- where they have come from and where they have acquired items of property
- whether items are for personal use or as gifts or for commercial use

1.1.3 Security officers
Learners should be able to understand and answer questions covering:
- the contents of their hand-baggage
- whether their baggage contains specified items (e.g. electronic equipment, real or toy weapons, etc.)

1.1.4 Police, traffic wardens, etc.
Learners should be able to:
- understand and answer questions concerning:
- personal identification
- details of any vehicle they drive
- details of any property lost or stolen
- their recent actions
- their intentions and reasons for acting

• apologise and ask for understanding of their position in case of minor infringements of regulations
• ask questions and understand the answers given regarding regulations (parking, public access to buildings, etc.)

(See also 1.11 'Finding the way'.)

• summon police assistance in the case of emergency (e.g. an accident, assault, robbery)

1.2 **Arrangements for accommodation**
(See Specific Notions 2.1–6.)

1.2.1 **Accommodation for visitors**
Learners should be able to:

• book accommodation by letter or telephone
• enquire about the nature and availability of accommodation in travel agents, or on arrival at a hotel, guest house, camp site, etc.
• complete registration forms
• complain and secure rectification of poor service, malfunctioning equipment, etc.
• complete departure procedures, query bills, etc.

1.2.2 **Accommodation for temporary residents**
Learners should be able to:

• enquire, in writing or speech, about accommodation to rent, e.g.
  - the number, type and size of rooms
  - the cost (per week, month or year) and terms of letting
  - the charges, services and amenities provided (e.g. local taxes, gas, water, electricity, etc., furniture and household equipment)
  - the arrangements for repairs and maintenance
• make and confirm inventories of contents and their condition
• make arrangements for and supervise household removal
• make arrangements for services, repairs and maintenance as required
• make oral and written complaints to landlord
1.3 **Arrangements for meals**
Learners should be able to:

- read and understand advertisements of restaurants, menus, etc.
- discuss the relative merits of accommodation, food, prices, waiting time, etc.
- ask for a (particular) table
- order food and drink
- ask and understand answers to questions on the nature and preparation of dishes
- ask for bill, enquire whether service and tax are included
- query and complain of slow service, poor food, overcharging, etc.

1.4 **Shopping: buying consumer goods**
Learners should be able to:

- read advertisements in newspapers, magazines, etc. for shops and consumer goods
- read for gist simple explanatory documentation on the nature, use and conditions of sale of goods
- read signposting in supermarkets, departmental stores, etc.
- ask whether goods are available and where they are to be found
- discuss the nature and relative merits of particular choices of goods
- negotiate prices and understand conditions of sale
- make payments and if necessary query prices, addition of bills, etc.
- return faulty, inappropriate or unwanted goods and negotiate replacement, refund, etc.

1.5 **Using public transport**
Learners should be able to:

- read publicised information (e.g. timetables, types and conditions of sale of tickets)
- enquire as to cost, times, routes of journeys
- discuss relative merits of different means of transport and companies (e.g. duration, cost, conditions of travel)
- order, query and pay for tickets (e.g. destination, class of travel, single or return, route, dates), reserve seats, etc.
- enquire as to location of gates/bays/platforms/quays, etc. of planes, buses, trains, ships, etc.
• register luggage for despatch, use left luggage facilities, report loss of
or damage to luggage and property
(for temporary residents)
• enquire about the existence of special rates, etc. and their terms and
conditions

1.6 Using private transport (car)
Learners should be able to:
• read, query and complete documentation for car hire
• read mandatory and advisory official road signs
• obtain petrol, oil, water, air and services at service stations
• report and secure repair of mechanical faults and breakdowns
• exchange necessary car and insurance details in case of accident
(See also 1.1.4, Contacts with police, traffic warden, etc. and 1.11, Finding the way.)

1.7 Using information services
Learners should be able to:
• make personal and telephone enquiries

1.8 Visiting public places (museums, theatres, stadiums, discos, etc.)
Learners should be able to:
• read publicised guides to tourist attractions, (newspaper
entertainment guides, brochures of particular institutions, posters,
handbills, etc.)
• enquire about opening times, prices of admission, performance
times, position and nature of seats
• book tickets in advance, or purchase at time of admission
• enquire about facilities and amenities (toilets, refreshments,
programmes, etc.)

1.9 Using public services
1.9.1 Post office
Learners should be able to:
• read simple published regulations, counter signs, etc. for specific
information
• enquire about postage rates, etc. (e.g. first and second class, letters,
postcards, destination categories, registered and express post,
parcels, telegrams and fax facilities)
• purchase stamps, postal and money orders
• complete customs declarations, registration forms, etc.

1.9.2 Telephone
Learners should be able to:
• read instructions on use of telephone
• consult telephone directories (including yellow pages)
• use telephone directory enquiries
(See also Language Functions 5.21–5.26.)

1.9.3 Bank
Learners should be able to:
• read public notices (especially service tills, currency regulations and exchange rates)
• enquire about exchange rates for notes/travellers’ cheques
• enquire about use of cheques, credit cards, etc.
(for temporary residents)
• enquire about, set up and use bank accounts

1.9.4 Medical services
Learners should be able to:
• read notices (e.g. consultation hours, specialisms, signposting of hospital departments, instructions to patients)
• ask for hospital or general practitioner appointment (by telephone)
• explain nature of complaint and answer questions on place and nature of ache or pain and other symptoms
• understand instructions for treatment at the time and subsequently
• obtain medication from pharmacist

1.10 Educational services (for temporary residents)
1.10.1 As students:
learners should be able to:
• read brochures (e.g. of ARELS, British Council and particular teaching institutions and language schools) and follow admission procedures
• understand and use target language as medium of instruction and as language of social interaction in English language classes and among learners during breaks, at mealtimes, etc.
• report and discuss problems relating to learning, teaching, study facilities, social activities, accommodation, canteen meals, etc.
discuss and enter for examinations
read examination regulations, rubrics and questions

1.10.2 As parents:
learners should be able to:
- enquire about arrangements/options for the public/private education of their children (e.g. types of school, entry requirements, cost, dates of terms, equipment required)
- make day-to-day arrangements for school attendance
- read simple notes and reports on children's progress
- attend parent/teacher meetings to discuss children's progress

1.11 Finding the way
Learners should be able to:
- read maps (road maps, train, tube and bus networks, and other direction signs and instructions)
- enquire from officials, service station staff or members of the public how to get to certain destinations, where a particular road or railway line leads to, the destination of a bus or train, etc.
- give similar information to others

1.12 Communicating at work
1.12.1 As temporary residents learners should be able to:
- seek work permits, etc. as required
- enquire (e.g. from employment agencies) about the nature, availability and conditions of employment (e.g. job description, pay, hours of work, free time and holidays, length of notice)
- read employment advertisements
- write letters of application and attend interviews giving written or spoken information about own personal data, qualifications and experience and answer questions about them
- understand and follow joining procedures
- understand and ask questions concerning the tasks to be performed on starting work
- understand safety and security regulations and instructions
- report an accident and make an insurance claim
- make use of welfare facilities
- communicate appropriately with superiors, colleagues and subordinates
- participate in the social life of the enterprise or institution (e.g. canteen, sports and social clubs, etc.)

1.12.2 As a member of the host community, a learner should be able to assist an English-speaking (native or non-native) person with the tasks listed above.

1.13 Private hospitality
(See Language functions, socialising.)

A learner should be able:

1.13.1 as host, to:
- issue an invitation, written or spoken
- greet and introduce guests
- explain about features of domestic arrangements
- follow social routines and exercise socialising functions
- exchange information and opinions on personal and social themes
- receive or exchange souvenirs or small gifts
- say goodbye to guests and react appropriately to expressions of appreciation

1.13.2 as guest, to:
- reply appropriately to accept or decline spoken and written invitations
- exchange greetings with host and other guests, known or newly met, whether introduced or not
- follow social routines and exercise socialising functions
- exchange information and opinions on personal and social themes
- offer flowers or small gifts
- express appreciation of hospitality given
- take leave, making or confirming travel arrangements as required

2 In the sphere of social interaction the learner has the ability:
- to exchange information
- to express, and to understand the expression of, opinions, views, attitudes, emotions, wishes
- to agree upon and carry out co-operative actions

The above in relation to topics of personal and of general interest, particularly:

- personal life and circumstances
• living conditions
• trade, profession, occupation
• education
• free-time activities
• travelling, regions, places, sights
• consumer goods, shopping, prices
• eating and drinking
• social relations
• politics, current events
• weather
• languages, language learning, language problems

For details, see Chapter 7, Specific Notions.

3 The learner can understand the gist and/or relevant details of written and of spoken texts which have the following characteristics:
• they are relevant to the situations listed under (1) above or to the topics under (2) above
• they have a clear structure, both conceptually and formally
• the information contained in them is exclusively or mainly offered explicitly
• their understanding requires no or only little familiarity with a foreign culture, other than 'general European culture'
• they are produced in an easily accessible form:
  - written texts are clearly printed and, when appropriate, provided with titles, paragraphing, illustrations etc.
  - spoken texts are produced with minimal acoustic distortion, in the standard pronunciation or a close approximation of this, and at a speech rate which is in the lower range of what is normal

4a In connection with (1) and (2) above the learner is familiar with relevant social conventions, e.g.
• non-linguistic: physical contact (hand-shaking, kissing, touching, etc.), significant roles of gesture and mime, etc.
• linguistic: verbal ways of drawing attention, ways of addressing, choosing degree of formality/informality, turn taking, contact ending, etc., in accordance with normal conventions of politeness. (See Chapter 11.)
b In connection with (2) the learner is, moreover, familiar with relevant social rituals, e.g.
   - visiting rituals (appropriate time for arriving, present giving, acceptable conversation topics, etc.)
   - eating and drinking rituals
   - acceptance and refusal rituals

5 In connection with (3) above the learner can use appropriate interpretation strategies both as a reader and as a listener, e.g.
   - distinguishing main points and secondary points
   - distinguishing fact from comment
   - identifying relevant information. This may involve determining the audience for whom the text was produced and the attitudes and communicative intentions of the author, as well as drawing inferences from what is explicit in the text
   - making use of clues such as titles, illustrations, typographical devices (e.g. bolding, italicising, underlining, paragraphing), and, in oral texts, such discourse markers as the placing of emphasis, structurally relevant pauses, tone of voice, etc.

6 The learner has some familiarity with characteristic features of the foreign culture (i.e. the culture of the major, or one of the major, countries where the language is used as native language), particularly those affecting:
   - everyday life
   - living conditions
   - interpersonal relations
   - major values and attitudes

7 The learner can use techniques and strategies for coping with demands of situations which go beyond his/her non-linguistic and/or linguistic repertoire, e.g.
   - engaging a communication partner's cooperation in filling a gap in one's know-how
   - appealing to tolerance of a foreigner's 'awkwardness', etc.
   - strategies for 'getting one's meaning across' in spite of inadequate command of the linguistic code
   - strategies for deriving meaning from texts in spite of the occurrence of unknown elements
   - strategies for enlisting the communication partner's help in solving communication problems
• using appropriate aids such as dictionaries, word lists, grammars, and other reference materials.
4 The objective: components of the specification

A communicative approach aims to enable the learners to use a foreign language for their own purposes. What these purposes are, depends on the personality, the circumstances, the needs and interests of the learners themselves. They are never fully predictable, but, starting from a particular target group, however heterogeneous it may be, we can make an attempt to identify those things that all of them are at least very likely to need or wish to be able to do in the foreign language. In order to do this in any useful way we have to try and determine in what situations they are most likely to use the foreign language, what roles they will play in these situations, and what matters they are most likely to have to be able to deal with in the foreign language. Determining all this — especially if we want to arrive at a fairly detailed description — is, in a way, a matter of guesswork. However, we can make at least better educated guesses if we make use of our collective experience, our knowledge of the world, and of whatever amount of consensus would appear to have been — explicitly or implicitly — achieved. In fact, the information on this that is available now is by no means negligible. It may be found in numerous studies that have appeared since the Threshold Level was originally published, and it is to be found in the choices made in those course materials with a communicative orientation that have been produced in the last 20 years or so. By and large, the assumptions made in the original Threshold Level would seem to have been widely upheld, so that the basis for the present specification is a more solid one than for the earlier one. Yet, it should be constantly borne in mind that these assumptions are made with regard to what the members of a very large target group are supposed to have in common and that the undoubtedly considerable individual differences among these members are deliberately left out of account. This is just another way of saying that the Threshold Level is a general objective only, and, moreover, one that is never to be regarded as fixed and closed but as something to be used flexibly and creatively.

In the preceding general characterisation and particularly in the extended characterisation we described the Threshold Level objective. The question is now how this may be most usefully specified, how it may be broken down into a coherent set of elements that may serve the purposes of those for whom the specification is meant.

Our starting-point is the situations in which the learners are most likely to find themselves. Each situation will make its own demands on their communicative resources. At the same time, these demands have
4 COMPONENTS OF THE SPECIFICATION

a lot in common, something which requires what we may regard as
general communicative ability. An economical description, then, of
what the learners need to be able to do, will specify the components of
this general communicative ability plus, for each situation envisaged,
the specific ability required to function adequately in it. The general
ability, the ability required in most communication situations, will be
the subject of by far the greater part of our specification. In fact, there
will be only one component that is directly concerned with specific
situation-related ability, and - as is to be expected - this will largely be
a matter of concrete vocabulary items.

A communicative approach does not consider knowledge of the
language - however desirable this may be - as an end in itself. Its goal is
the ability to use language, to do with language the kind of things one
needs or wants to do with it.

The starting-point of the specification of our objective, then, is a list of
the kind of things people may do by means of language. These are
things such as describing, enquiring, denying, thanking, apologising,
expressing feelings, etc. We refer to these things as 'language
functions' and we say that in saying, for instance, 'I'm sorry' people
fulfil the language function of apologising or of expressing regret. The
first component of our specification is a list of those language
functions that the members of our target group are most likely to need
to be able to fulfil.

Language functions are not fulfilled in a void, with regard to nothing.
If we say 'I'm sorry', we apologise for or express regret about something,
even though we may not mention this explicitly because it is
sufficiently clear from the context in which the utterance is produced.
If, however, we were to say 'I'm sorry for being late', we explicitly refer to a
particular concept, the concept of 'lateness'. The concepts that we may
refer to while fulfilling language functions will be indicated here as
'notions'. Among the notions we distinguish 'general notions' and
'specific notions'. General notions are such as may be expressed in
almost any situation and specific notions are those which are likely to
be expressed typically in particular situations only. In most situations
the need may arise to refer to time, to place, to quantity or quality, to
express relations between entities, etc. The notions involved in this will
be listed in our second component as 'general notions'. A notion such
as 'timetable', on the other hand, is likely to be expressed only in a
situation of people dealing with 'travelling'; the notion of 'potatoes' is
most likely to be expressed in connection with 'eating' or with
'agriculture'. Such situation-related or topic-related notions will be
listed in our third component, 'specific notions'. In this third
component we shall also give general indications as to what people will
be supposed to be able to do in each of the situations or with regard to
each topic included here. Such indications facilitate and justify the
selection of those notions which may be thought particularly relevant
to the members of the target group.
Before passing on to other components of our specification we wish to point out that the above distinctions between functions and notions on the one hand and between general notions and specific notions on the other cannot always be made with full consistency. Thus, it may be argued that certain language functions may just as well be interpreted as expressing notions and that for certain notions the choice between 'general' and 'specific' seems to be an arbitrary one. There is no denying that our system of classification has its shortcomings. Yet, it does ensure the fullest possible coverage, and it has fully proved its value for practical purposes.

The breakdown of language use in terms of the fulfilment of certain functions with regard to certain notions may obscure the fact that in actual communication situations these functions are rarely fulfilled in isolation. Usually a communication situation will require the fulfilment of general functions in various combinations and sequences. In general, the predictability of these combinations and sequences is highly limited. Yet, there are certain features and patterns that occur more or less regularly, and some familiarity with them is indispensable for effective communication. A number of these features are included in our list of language functions under 'structuring discourse', and a more general treatment particularly with regard to dialogues will be given in the chapter on 'verbal exchange patterns' (Chapter 8).

One of the differences between the present objective and the original Threshold Level is the stronger emphasis on the ability to deal with printed texts and with spoken texts produced by media. This ability is listed as item 3 in the 'extended characterisation'. Because of this stronger emphasis we include in our specification a separate chapter on 'dealing with texts' (Chapter 9).

We also include a short chapter on writing (Chapter 10), because it may be convenient to have a survey of what may be expected of learners at this level, rather than having to collect this from several different parts of the specification.

The fulfilment of language functions and their sequencing will, to a certain extent, be governed by the social conventions which are observed in a particular language community. These conventions are part of the sociocultural context in which the language concerned is used as the medium of communication. This context may have a strong influence on what people express and how they express it. Even at Threshold Level some familiarity with this context, or at least awareness of its potential significance, is essential to effective communication. It will be dealt with in a separate chapter of our specification, called 'sociocultural competence' (Chapter 11).

In many real-life communication situations the learners' resources, in terms of knowledge, skills and insights, will fall short of the
requirements of these situations. Successful communication will then depend on the learners' skill in coping with these requirements in spite of the inadequacy of their resources. We shall, therefore, include a chapter on 'compensation strategies' in our specification (Chapter 12).

Finally, we shall pay attention to ways in which the experience of learning a foreign language may be exploited in order to benefit the learners as learners. Strictly speaking, this falls outside the scope of the objective as described in the 'characterisations'. Yet, it may be assumed that learners who have some awareness of 'how to learn' are likely to 'pass the threshold' more readily than those who have none. We do not consider it out of place, therefore, to add a 'learning-to-learn' component to our specification (Chapter 13).

In the specification of the Threshold Level actual language forms (grammatical structures, words, etc.) play only a secondary role. What is required at Threshold Level is that learners should be able to do certain things in the foreign language, and how they do these things is not our prime concern. With regard to this we confine ourselves to an indication - in the chapter 'degree of skill' (Chapter 14) - of certain quality criteria that are relevant to effective communication at this level. Apart from this, the only thing which we feel it is justified to do in this respect is to give some guidance as to how learners might be able to do all the things specified not only effectively but also as economically as possible in terms of the learning load involved. For this reason we add recommended 'exponents' (linguistic realisations) to the various language functions and to the notions. These exponents are not to be mistaken, however, for a prescribed grammar + vocabulary. They may provide useful guidance, they give a concrete indication of the degree of formality/informality envisaged, and they may be used as checklists, but there their role ends. The same remarks apply to the word index and the grammatical summary added to the specification as appendices.

As the exponents will show, the degree of formality/informality recommended for Threshold Level learners is fairly neutral. With their limited familiarity with the ways language forms are used in the sociocultural context concerned, learners are well advised, we feel, to avoid extremes both in the direction of formality and in that of informality. If, nevertheless, there should be a need for more marked registers, the appropriate exponents can always be added. In the lists provided exponents are marked ●. These are exponents that, we think, the learners are very likely to be confronted with by communication partners but that they will hardly be required to produce themselves. ● thus means that the learners should at least be able to understand these language forms if used by others. The exponents marked ● have a high degree of predictability. Beyond these, the learners will be confronted with many other language forms, particularly in
connection with item 3 of the 'extended characterisation'. Because of
the low degree of predictability of these forms, no attempt is made to
provide any further guidance in this document. Such an attempt would
also be futile in the light of the emphasis that is placed here on the self-
help strategies that are supposed to give the learner access to texts
containing unknown elements.
5 Language functions

Introduction

In the present specification the language functions - what people do by means of language - are listed in six broad categories:

1 imparting and seeking factual information
2 expressing and finding out attitudes
3 getting things done (suasion)
4 socialising
5 structuring discourse
6 communication repair

The second category is by far the most comprehensive and is subdivided as follows:

2.1–2.4 factual: agreement, etc.
2.5–2.14 factual: knowledge, etc.
2.15–2.22 factual: modality
2.23–2.28 volitional
2.29–2.50 emotional
2.51–2.57 moral

The lists of functions under each category heading are the result of a process of selection. The principle of selection has been throughout that the functions selected should meet the most likely and urgent needs of the learners and that together they should not exceed an average learning load of two to three years for courses of average intensity, i.e. two to three hours per week, 35–40 weeks a year.

In many cases more than one way of expressing a given function is suggested. It is, of course, entirely acceptable for learners to decide not to use the full range of alternatives given. They should, however, be able to understand all the options provided when they are used by other people. The symbol ●, for receptive use only, has been used sparingly to indicate that a particular option, though likely to be encountered in contact with native speakers, is felt to be of lower priority in the learners' productive repertoire.

Language functions may be fulfilled directly and indirectly. They are fulfilled directly if an exponent is used in its conventional meaning, i.e.
in the meaning that would normally be assigned to it if it were used in isolation. 'You should go now' fulfils the function of 'advising others to do something' directly, whereas 'It's getting late' – in its conventional meaning fulfilling the function of 'reporting' – may serve the same purpose indirectly. The possibilities for the indirect fulfilment of language functions vary in accordance with the situational and the linguistic context of a communicative act. This variation is such that a systematic description and selection on behalf of our objective is not possible. The exponents we propose, therefore, are on the whole those which may be considered to fulfil the functions concerned directly. This does not mean that the indirect fulfilment of language functions should be avoided in course materials designed for Threshold Level. On the contrary, an attempt to do so might lead to highly unnatural language use.

Language functions for Threshold Level including recommended exponents

1 Imparting and seeking factual information
   1.1 Identifying (defining)
   1.1.1 (with suitable gesture)
       this (one), that (one)
       these, those
   1.1.2 It is + me, you, him, her, us, them
   1.1.3 the + NP/this, that, these, those
       (+ NP) + be + NP
       'This is the bedroom.
       The animal over there is my dog.
   1.1.4 I, you, he, she, it, we, they + be + NP
       'He is the owner of the restaurant.

1.2 reporting (describing and narrating)
   1.2.1 declarative sentences
       The train has left.
   1.2.2 NP + say, think + complement clause
       He says the shop is shut.

1.3 correcting
   1.3.1 As 1.1 and 1.2, with contrastive stress
       'This is the bedroom. The train has left.
   1.3.2 (correcting a positive statement)
       (e.g. Valletta is in Italy.)
       No (+ tag)
       'No it isn't.
   1.3.3 negative sentences
       Valletta isn't in Italy.
   1.3.4 (correcting a negative statement)
       (e.g. We didn't go to London.)
       Yes (+ tag)
       'Yes you did.
1.3.5 positive statements (with intensifying do)
You 'did .go to .London.

1.4 asking

1.4.1 (for confirmation)

1.4.1.1 interrogative sentences
'Did you ,see him?

1.4.1.2 declarative sentences with high-rising intonation
You 'saw him?

1.4.1.3 statement and question tag
They ,lost the .match, | ,didn't they?

1.4.2 for information

1.4.2.1 wh questions
(time) when?
'When will the -guests ar,rive?
(place) where?
'Where is my ,purse?
(manner) how?
'How do you -make an ,omelette?
(degree) how far/much/long hot, etc.?
'How -far is it to ,York?
(reason) why?
'Why did you -say ,that?

1.4.2.2 Please (can you) tell me + subordinate clause/ + NP
'Please can you -tell me the -way to the ,station?

1.4.3 seeking identification
(person) who?
'Who is ,that?
(possession) whose + NP?
'Whose -gloves are ,these?
(thing) what? which + NP?
'What is ,this?
Which .suit will you -wear tonight?
(event) What happened?

1.5 answering question

1.5.1 (for confirmation)
Yes, No (+ tag)
,Yes, | he ,is.
,No, | he ,isn't.

1.5.2 (for information)
declarative sentences, clauses, phrases and single words

1.5.2.1 (time) ('When will it ,happen?)
At '6 p.m.

1.5.2.2 (place) ('Where's my ,box?)
'On the ,table.

1.5.2.3 (manner) ('How do you ,drive?)
'Not very ,fast.

1.5.2.4 (degree) ('How ,far is it?)
'Not very ,far.

1.5.2.5 (reason) ('Why are you ,here?)
(because +) declarative sentence
Because I am a ,member.

1.5.3 (seeking identification)
See 1.1.

2 Expressing and finding out attitudes

2.1 expressing agreement with a statement

2.1.1 I ('quite) a gree.

2.1.2 'That's ,right.

2.1.3 'That's cor,rect.

2.1.4 In' deed.

2.1.5 Ex,actly.

2.1.6 (with a positive statement)
(You -work 'hard.)

2.1.6.1 Yes (+ tag)
,Yes, | we ,do.

2.1.6.2 Of ,course.

2.1.6.3 Certainly.
2.1.6.4 (Yes) I 'think/be'lieve ,so.

2.1.7 (with a negative statement)

2.1.7.1 No (+ tag)
(You 'can't -stop "now.)
'No, I we 'can't.

2.1.7.2 Of 'course .not.

2.1.7.3 'Certainly .not.

2.1.7.4 (No) I don't " think so.

2.1.7.5 I be'lieve ,not.

2.2 expressing disagreement with a statement

2.2.1 I 'don't a,gree.

2.2.2 That's 'not ,right.

2.2.3 You are 'wrong ,there).

2.2.4 (with a positive statement)

2.2.4.1 No (+ tag)
('Spinach is 'horrible.) 'No it ,isn't.

2.2.4.2 'Not ,so.

2.2.4.3 'Certainly .not.

2.2.4.4 I 'don't 'think so.

2.2.5 (with a negative statement)

2.2.5.1 Yes (+ tag)
(Tomorrow 'isn't "Wednesday.)
'Yes it 'is.

2.2.5.2 I think (+ positive statement)
I think 'he will -come.

2.3 enquiring about agreement and disagreement

2.3.1 statement + question tag
She is 'French, | isn't she?

2.3.2 'Don't you agree (+ that clause)?
'Don't you a-gree that she is ,beautiful?

2.3.3 Do(n't) you think + complement clause
'Don't you -think it's ,nice?

2.4 denying statements

2.4.1 That 'isn't ,true.

2.4.2 No (+ negative tag)
(You 'saw me -there.)
'No I 'didn't.

2.4.3 Negative sentences (with not, never, nowhere, nobody, nothing, or not + ever, anybody, anywhere, anything)
'I 'saw ,nothing.
I 'didn't 'see ,anything.

2.5 stating whether one knows or does not know a person, thing or fact

2.5.1 I ('don't) .know

2.5.1.1 + complement clause
I 'know she 'left, | but I 'don't -know 'why (she -left).

2.5.1.2 + wh (+ clause)

2.5.1.3 + NP
I 'know ,Mrs 'Thatcher.

2.6 enquiring whether someone knows or does not know a person, thing or fact

2.6.1 Do you know

2.6.1.1 + complement clause?
'Do you ,know that she is -dead?

2.6.1.2 + NP?
'Do you -know ,Kenya?

2.6.1.3 + wh (+ clause)?
'Do you -know where he ,lives?
'Do you -know ,why he did that?

2.6.2 Have you heard

2.6.2.1 + complement clause?
'Have you -heard that the ,President has -died?

2.6.2.2 + of + NP?
'Have you -heard of an-opera called 'Die ,Nachtschwalbe'?
2.6.2.3 + wh clause
'Have you heard what happened today?

2.6.3 You know
2.6.3.1 + complement clause, + don't you?
You know it's six o'clock, don't you?

2.6.3.2 + NP, + don't you?
You know Mrs James, don't you?

2.6.3.4 + wh clause, + don't you?
You know where he lives, don't you?

2.7 stating whether one remembers or has forgotten a person, thing or fact or action
2.7.1 I (don't/can't) remember
2.7.1.1 + VP gerund
I don't remember saying that.
2.7.1.2 + wh clause
I can't remember where I put my handbag.
2.7.1.3 + complement clause
I remember that he gave it back.
2.7.1.4 + NP
I remember our holiday in Spain.
2.7.2 I forget.
2.7.3 I have(n't) forgotten
2.7.3.1 + to + VPinf
I've forgotten to lock the door.
2.7.3.2 + NP
I haven't forgotten your birthday.
I have forgotten my passport.

2.7.3.3 + VP gerund
I have not forgotten climbing Mont Blanc.

2.7.3.4 + wh clause
I've forgotten where it is.

2.8 enquiring whether someone remembers or has forgotten a person, thing, fact or action
2.8.1 Do(n't) you remember?
2.8.2 Do(n't) you remember
2.8.2.1 + VP gerund
'Don't you remember coming home last night?
2.8.2.2 + wh clause
'Do you remember where you left it?
2.8.2.3 + complement clause
'Don't you remember that James was there, too?
2.8.2.4 + NP
'Do you remember Capri?

2.8.3 Have you remembered
2.8.3.1 + to + VPinf
'Have you remembered to feed the cat?
2.8.3.2 + NP
'Have you remembered her birthday?

2.9 expressing degrees of probability
2.9.1 (certain'ly)
He will certainly be there.
2.9.2 probably
'They will probably lose.
2.9.3 possibly
but they may possibly win.
2.9.4 (not)(very) likely
It's not very likely, ...
2.9.5 impossible
... but 'not im.possible.

2.9.6 NP + be + certain/likely + to + VPinf
The mu-seum is 'certain to be ,closed.

2.9.7 It is certain/probable/likely/possible/impossible + complement clause
It is 'likely you will .pass.

2.9.8 NP will/must/may/can/cannot + VPinf
That -painting 'cannot be by Pi,casso.

2.10 enquiring as to degrees of probability

2.10.1 be + NP certain/likely + to + VPinf?
'Is the ·story ·likely to be .true?

2.10.2 Is it certain/probable/likely possible + complement clause?
'Is it ·likely to ·rain?

2.10.3 Will/must/may/can + NP + VPinf?
'Can ·oil and ·water ,mix?

2.10.4 sentences in 2.9+ high rising intonation
The mu-seum is 'certain to be ·closed?

2.11 expressing or denying necessity (including logical deduction)

2.11.1 (not) necessary/necessarily
'Good ·shoes | are nec'es'sarily ex,pensive.

2.11.2 NP + must/cannot + VPinf
People 'must ·sleep ·sometimes.

2.11.3 NP + need not + inf
'Classical ·music | 'need ·not be ,boring.

2.11.4 so/therefore + declarative sentences
'I am ,thinking | ·therefore
'I ex,ist.

2.12 enquiring as to necessity (including logical deduction)

2.12.1 necessary/necessarily (in interrogative sentences)
Is 'that neces-sarily ·so?

2.12.2 must + NP + VPinf?
'Must ·things be ·black or ·white?

2.13 expressing degrees of certainty

2.13.1 confident assertion (positive or negative)

2.13.1.1 certainly (in declarative sentences)
She is 'certainly ·over ,thirty.

2.13.1.2 I am (quite) certain/sure (+ complement clause)
I am 'quite ·sure | that
'Stalin ·died in ·19-5,2.

2.13.1.3 declarative sentences with stressed do, be or auxiliary
I ,did ·post the ·letter.

2.13.1.4 declarative sentences (+ tag)
(with low falling intonation)
'Ancaka is in ·Turkey, | ,isn't it?

2.13.1.5 declarative sentences (+ I think/suppose unstressed)
'Rome is in ·Italy, | I-think.

2.13.1.6 I know + that clause
I 'know I-run is in ,Spain | 'not ,France.

2.13.1.7 declarative sentence + tag
with low falling/high falling intonation
You're 'Polish, | 'aren't you?

2.13.2 tentative assertion
2.13.2.1 to seem
The translation 'seems to be correct.

2.13.2.2 perhaps/maybe (also in declarative sentences)
'Maybe you're right.

2.13.2.3 I don't think so.

2.13.2.4 I (don't) think/believe + that clause
I don't think he has ever been here.

2.13.2.5 I'm not (quite) sure, but + declarative sentence
I'm not quite sure, but I think he has already gone.

2.13.2.6 declarative sentence + I think (with rising/falling-rising intonation)
He's French, I think.

2.13.2.7 declarative sentences + tag with low-rising intonation
You're coming on Thursday, aren't you?

2.13.3 complete uncertainty

2.13.3.1 I don't know (+ if clause/wh clause)
I don't know if he will come.

2.13.3.2 I'm not (at all) sure (+ if clause/wh clause)
I'm not at all sure what he wants.

2.13.3.3 I wonder + if clause/wh clause
I wonder why they go to London by car.

2.14 enquiring about degrees of certainty

2.14.1 Are you (quite) sure (+ that clause/if clause/wh clause)
Are you sure the food is cooked?

2.14.2 Do you (really) think/believe suppose + that clause?
'Do you think this is real silk?

2.14.3 How sure are you + that clause?
How sure are you that Basle is in Switzerland?

2.15 expressing obligation

2.15.1 NP + have to/must + VPinf
We must be home before midnight.

2.16 enquiring about obligation

2.16.1 interrogative sentences and wh questions corresponding to 2.15
'Must we fill in this form now? When have we to leave?

2.17 expressing ability/inability to do something

2.17.1 NP + can(not) + VPinf
I can understand Spanish, but I can't speak it well.

2.17.2 NP + be (not) able to + VPinf
I am able to ride a horse.

2.17.3 NP + be unable to + VPinf
John is unable to read yet.

2.18 enquiring about ability or inability to do something

2.18.1 interrogative sentences and wh questions corresponding to 2.17
'Can you speak Spanish? Are you able to ride a horse?

2.19 expressing that something is or is not permitted, or permissible

2.19.1 NP + be (not) allowed
'Smoking is allowed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.19.2</td>
<td>NP + be (not) permitted</td>
<td>Pho'tography is .not per,mitted in the ca.thedral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.19.3</td>
<td>People/You can/may/must not + VPinf</td>
<td>You must 'not be ,lazy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.19.4</td>
<td>People/You are not supposed to + VPinf</td>
<td>'People are 'not sup-posed to ·walk on the ,grass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>enquiring whether something is or is not permitted or permissible (including seeking permission)</td>
<td>Photography is .not permitted in the cathedral. People/You can/may/must not + VPinf. You must 'not be ,lazy. People/You are not supposed to + VPinf. 'People are 'not sup-posed to ·walk on the ,grass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.20.1</td>
<td>Can/may + I/people/one + VPinf?</td>
<td>'May I -come ,in?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.20.2</td>
<td>Do you mind (+ if clause)?</td>
<td>'Do you ·mind if I ·sit ,down?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.20.3</td>
<td>Is it all right (+ if clause)?</td>
<td>'Is it all ·right if I ·smoke?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>granting permission</td>
<td>'Certainly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.1</td>
<td>'Yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.2</td>
<td>'Certainly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.3</td>
<td>'Please ,do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.4</td>
<td>'That's all ·right.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.5</td>
<td>That's ·quite all ·right.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21.6</td>
<td>Of ,course.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>withholding permission</td>
<td>'No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22.1</td>
<td>'No.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22.2</td>
<td>You ,can't.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22.3</td>
<td>I'm a'fraid ,not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22.4</td>
<td>I'm sorry (+ but clause)</td>
<td>I'm 'sorry,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.22.5</td>
<td>It is not allowed/permitted</td>
<td>It is not allowed/permitted (now/tonight) here/in this country etc. ('Can I ·park here?) 'Not until ·6 ·30 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>expressing wants/desires</td>
<td>I'd like + NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.1</td>
<td>I'd like + NP</td>
<td>I'd 'like an ·ice,cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.2</td>
<td>I'd like + to + VPinf</td>
<td>I'd 'like to ·wash my ,hands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.3</td>
<td>I want + NP, please</td>
<td>I ,want a 'cup of ,tea, ·please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.4</td>
<td>I want + to + VPinf, please</td>
<td>I want ·to ·go to the ,toilet, ·please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.5</td>
<td>(please) may I (+ VPinf)</td>
<td>'Please may I ·have a ,drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.23.6</td>
<td>Can I have + NP (please)</td>
<td>'Can I ·have my ,bill, ·please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>enquiring about wants/desires</td>
<td>'What would you ·like (to ,do)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.24.1</td>
<td>'What would you ·like (to ,do)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.24.2</td>
<td>Would you like + NP/ + to + VPinf</td>
<td>'Would you ·like a ,cake?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.24.3</td>
<td>Do you want + NP/ + to + VPinf</td>
<td>'Do you ·want to ·try the ·suit ,on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>expressing intentions</td>
<td>'Certainly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.25.1</td>
<td>NP + be + going to + VPinf</td>
<td>I'm 'going to ·buy a ·new ·car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.25.2</td>
<td>NP + will + VPinf</td>
<td>I'll ex'plain ,later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.25.3</td>
<td>NP + intend(s) to + VPinf</td>
<td>'Ann in-tends to ·go to A,merica.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.25.4</td>
<td>NP + be thinking of + VP gerund</td>
<td>We are 'thinking of ·driving to ·Turkey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>enquiring about intentions</td>
<td>Interrogative sentences and wh questions corresponding to 2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.26.1</td>
<td>Interrogative sentences and wh questions corresponding to 2.25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

2.27 expressing preference
2.27.1 I’d prefer + NP | to + VP inf
   I’d pre’fer to ·go by ,train.
2.27.2 I prefer + NP + to + NP
   I pre’fer ‘hockey | to ,football.
2.27.3 I’d rather (not) + VP
   I’d ‘rather ·not ,fly ·there.
2.27.4 I’d rather VP inf (than + contrastive element)
   I’d ‘rather ·drink ,coffee | than ,tea.

2.28 enquiring about preference
2.28.1 interrogative sentences and wh questions corresponding to 2.27
   ‘Do you pre-fer ,coffee to ·tea?
   ‘Which do you pre,fer?
   ‘Where would you ‘rather go, | ‘London or ,Oxford?

2.28.2 NP or NP?
   ‘Tea or ,coffee?

2.28.3 Adj or Adj?
   ‘Black or ,white?

2.29 expressing pleasure, happiness
2.29.1 That’s ‘lovely ‘wondeeful ‘great!
2.29.2 How ‘nice!
2.29.3 I’m/I feel so ‘happy!
2.29.4 I’m ‘very ·pleased.
2.29.5 I’m (very) glad/delighted (+ that clause to + VP inf)
   I’m ‘very ·glad to ,see you ·here.

2.30 expressing displeasure, unhappiness
2.30.1 ‘Oh ,dear!
2.30.2 ‘I don’t ·feel very/a t all ·happy.

2.31 enquiring about pleasure/displeasure happiness/unhappiness
2.31.1 ‘How ,are you?
2.31.2 ‘How are you ‘feeling?
2.31.3 ‘Are you ‘happy?
2.31.4 ‘Are you ‘pleased?

2.32 expressing liking
2.32.1 NP + be (very) good/nice/ pleasant
   This ·coffee is ‘very ,good.

2.32.2 I like/enjoy + NP/VP gerund
   (very much)
   ‘I ‘like ·riding ·very ·much.

2.32.3 I love NP/VP gerund
   ‘I ‘love ,cats.

2.33 expressing dislike
2.33.1 Ugh!
2.33.2 NP + be not (very/at all) nice/pleasant
   That’s ·not a’t all ·nice.

2.33.3 NP + be + nasty/horrible
   ‘Sour ·milk is ,nasty.

2.33.4 I don’t like/enjoy NP/VP gerund (very much/at all)
   ‘I don’t ·like | ·sweet ·tea.

2.33.5 I hate + NP/VP gerund
   ‘I hate ·hurting ·people.

2.33.6 ‘I’d hate/I wouldn’t like + to + VP inf
   I ‘wouldn’t ·like to be ,late.

2.34 enquiring about likes and dislikes
2.34.1 Do you like/enjoy NP/VP gerund
   ‘Do you en-joy ,ballet?
2.34.2 How do you like NP/VP gerund
'How do you -like -playing 
.pop -music?'
2.34.3 'What do you ,like?
2.35 expressing satisfaction
2.35.1 'Good!
2.35.2 'Fine!
2.35.3 demonstrative + be (very)
good/nice
'That's 'good.
2.35.4 (This is) 'just what I ,want(ed)/
 ,need/ ,meant/-had in ,mind.
2.35.5 (following dissatisfaction)
2.35.5.1 'That is ,better.
2.35.5.2 It's ('quite) all ,right (.now).
2.35.5.3 'That will ,do.
2.35.5.4 That is ('good) e.nough.
2.36 expressing dissatisfaction
2.36.1 declarative sentences
'This ·soup is ,cold.
The 'T,V ·doesn't ·work.
2.36.2 I'm not satisfied/happy
(with this + NP)
I'm 'not ,happy with this ,fridge.
2.36.3 I don't like/want this (+ NP)
I 'don't ,want this ·soup.
2.36.4 I don't like/want NP like this
I 'don't ,like ·cabbage like ·this.
2.36.5 Demonstrative be not right
(yet)
This is 'not ,right ·yet.
2.36.6 Demonstrative be not want I
want(ed)/had in mind/mean't
These are 'not what I ·had
in ,mind.
2.36.7 That will 'not ,do.
2.36.8 That is 'not ,good e.nough.
2.37 enquiring about 
satisfaction/dissatisfaction
2.37.1 Are you satisfied/happy (with
+ NP)?
'Are you ,satisfied with your 
·meal?
2.37.2 Do you like NP like this?
'Do you ,like ·coffee like ·this?
2.37.3 ·Is it 'all ,right (.now)?
2.37.4 'Is this what you ,want(ed)/ 
,need/ ,meant/-had in ,mind?
2.37.5 How do you like/find NP?
'How do you ·find our ,beer?
2.37.6 'What is the ,matter?
2.38 expressing interest
2.38.1 'Really!
2.38.2 Is 'that ,so!
2.38.3 'How ,interesting!
2.38.4 I am (very) interested in NP/VP
gerund
I am 'interested in ·old ,stamps.
2.38.5 NP interests me (greatly)
'Greek ·men ·interest me 
,greatly
2.39 expressing lack of interest
2.39.1 'How ,boring!
2.39.2 I am bored (by NP)
I am 'bored | by ,politics | on ·T,V.
2.39.3 I am not/not very/not at all
interested in NP/VP gerund
I am not a't all ,interested | in 
·going a,broad.
2.39.4 NP does not interest me (very
much/at all).
·Sport does 'not ·interest me a,t 
all.
2.39.5 It doesn't matter (+ that
clause/if clause)
It 'doesn't ,matter | if it 'rains or 
,not.
2.39.6 I don't care (+ that clause/ if clause)
I 'don't care if it is 'foggy or fine.
2.39.7 I don't mind (+ that clause/ if clause)
I 'don't mind if you smoke.
2.39.8 Whatever you say, I like.

2.40 enquiring about interest or lack of interest
2.40.1 Are(n't) you interested in NP/VP gerund?
'Aren't you interested in foreign languages?
2.40.2 Do(es)(n't) NP interest you?
'Does photography interest you?

2.41 expressing surprise
2.41.1 What a surprise!
2.41.2 How surprising!
2.41.3 Fancy, that!
2.41.4 Well, 'this' that is a surprise!
2.41.5 That is surprising!
2.41.6 I'm surprised (+ that clause/to + VPinf)
I'm surprised to hear that.
2.41.7 Fancy + VP gerund
Fancy swimming at Christmas.
2.41.8 It surprises me (+ that clause)
It surprises me that the dollar is 'so weak.

2.42 expressing lack of surprise
2.42.1 Well?
2.42.2 'So, what?
2.42.3 (It is) 'Just as I expected.

2.43 enquiring about surprise
2.43.1 Does 'that surprise you?
2.43.2 Is 'this/that -what you expected?
2.43.3 'Are you surprised (+ that clause)
'Are you surprised that I came to see you?

2.44 expressing hope
2.44.1 I ('do) 'hope, so.
2.44.2 I ('do) 'hope, not.
2.44.3 I (do) hope + that clause.
I 'hope it stays fine.
2.44.4 I hope am hoping + to + VPinf
I 'hope to become a doctor.

2.45 expressing disappointment
2.45.1 What a pity + that clause!
'What a pity they can't have children.
2.45.2 That's a ('great) pity!
'What a shame!

2.46 expressing fear
2.46.1 'Help!
2.46.2 I'm frightened.
2.46.3 I am afraid (+ that clause/to + VPinf/of + NP)
I'm afraid of that man.
2.46.4 I'm (rather) worried (about NP)
I'm rather worried about Joan.

2.47 giving reassurance
2.47.1 'There, there.
2.47.2 'Don't be afraid.
2.47.3 'Don't worry.
2.47.4 It's ('quite) all right.

2.48 enquiring about fear/worry
2.48.1 Are you afraid/frightened (of NP/VP gerund)
'Are you afraid of the dark?
2.48.2 Are you worried (about NP)?
   'Are you worried about your health?'
2.48.3 Is something worrying you?
2.48.4 Is there something on your mind?
2.49 expressing gratitude
2.49.1 'Thank you (so much/very much in deed)
2.49.2 ('Many), thanks!
2.49.3 It/That was (very/most) kind/nice/good of you to + VP
   It was 'most kind of you to call.
2.49.4 I'm very grateful to you (for NP/VP gerund)
   I'm 'very grateful to you for telling me about it.
2.50 reacting to an expression of gratitude
2.50.1 'Thank you.
2.50.2 'Not at all.
2.50.3 It's a pleasure.
2.51 offering an apology
2.51.1 'Sorry!
2.51.2 I am (very) sorry!
2.51.3 I'm 'so sorry.
2.51.4 'Please forgive me.
2.51.5 I apologise.
2.51.6 I do apologise.
2.51.7 (for disturbing somebody)
   I beg your pardon.
   Excuse me, please.
2.52 accepting an apology
2.52.1 'Not at all.
2.52.2 That's quite all right.
2.52.3 'That's all right.
2.52.4 It doesn't matter.
2.52.5 It doesn't matter at all, bit.
2.52.6 For get it.
2.53 expressing moral obligation
2.53.1 NP be not supposed to + VP
   You are 'not supposed to do that.
2.53.2 NP should (not)/ought (not) to
   You 'ought to drive more slowly.
2.54 expressing approval
2.54.1 (very) good
2.54.2 (That's) fine/excellent.
2.54.3 'Well, done.
2.55 expressing disapproval
2.55.1 Tut-tut (clicks)
2.55.2 That's it's 'not very 'good/ nice.
2.55.3 You shouldn't have done that.
2.56 enquiring about approval/disapproval
2.56.1 'How's this?
2.56.2 'Is this all right?
2.56.3 'Do you approve (of + NP/VP gerund)
   'Do you approve of the Welfare State?
2.56.4 What do you think of + NP/VP gerund?
   'What do you think of cricket?
2.56.5 How do you find NP/VP gerund?
   'How do you find living in England?
2.57 expressing regret, sympathy
2.57.1 'What a shame!
2.57.2 What a pity (+ that clause)
   'What a pity | 'Peter died so young.
2.57.3 It's a (great) pity (+ that clause)
   It's a 'great pity | he left the party.
2.57.4 I'm (so/very) sorry (+ that clause/if clause)
   I'm 'sorry if I 'hurt you.
2.57.5 I'm (so/very) sorry about NP
   I'm so 'very sorry | about your illness.
2.57.6 I'm (so/very) sorry to + VPinf
   I'm sorry | to hear you are going away.
2.57.7 'Oh dear ...

3 Deciding on courses of action (Suasion)
3.1 suggesting a course of action (involving both speaker and addressee)
3.1.1 Let's + VPinf!
   'Let's go!
3.1.2 Shall we + VPinf?
   'Shall we go?
3.1.3 We could + VPinf
   We could 'go for a walk.
3.1.4 What/How about + NP/VP gerund
   'How about walking home?
3.1.5 We might (perhaps) + VPinf
   We might per'thaps 'go by train.
3.1.6 Why not + VPinf?
   'Why not fly there?
3.1.6 Why don't we + VPinf?
   'Why don't we ask them to dinner?

3.2 agreeing to a suggestion
3.2.1 'Yes, let's.
3.2.2 'Why not?
3.2.3 (That's a) 'Good idea.
3.2.4 'All right.

3.3 requesting someone to do something
3.3.1 Please + VP imperative
   'Please sit down.
3.3.2 VP imperative + please
   'Stop talking, please.
3.3.3 Would/could you (please) + VPinf?
   'Could you please close the door?
3.3.4 Would you be so kind as to + VPinf
   'Would you be kind as to wait?
3.3.5 Kindly + VP imperative + (please)
   'Kindly make less noise please.
3.3.6 Would you mind + VP gerund
   'Would you mind opening the window?
3.3.7 Can I have + NP + VP past
   'Can I have my shirt washed?

3.4 advising someone to do something
3.4.1 You should + VPinf
   You should go to the police.
3.4.2 You ought to + VPinf
   You ought to be more careful.
3.4.3 Why don't you + VPinf
   'Why don't you stop working so hard?
3.4.4 If I were you, I'd + VPinf
   If I were you | I'd 'phone him now.
3.5 warning others to do something or to refrain from doing something
3.5.1 VP imperative with falling/rising intonation
   Be 'careful! Look 'out!
3.5.2 Don't + VPinf
   Don't 'cut your-self.
3.5.3 Mind + NP
   'Mind your 'head!
3.5.4 declarative sentences with implication
   That 'knife is 'sharp. (Be careful not to cut yourself.)
3.6 encouraging someone to do something
3.6.1 'Come ,on (+ VP imperative)
   'Come ,on, | 'keep ,trying.
3.6.2 Now then (+ VP imperative)
   'Now ,then, | 'don't ,stop.
3.7 instructing or directing someone to do something
3.7.1 You + VP (simple present)
   You .take a 'freshly -peeled .onion.
3.7.2 imperative sentence
   'Mix the .flour, .eggs and .milk to,gether.
3.7.3 passive sentences (esp. in written instructions)
   The 'kit is as,sembled | by 'bolting the -parts to,gether.
3.8 requesting assistance
3.8.1 'Can/Could you ,help, me, .please?
3.9 offering assistance
3.9.1 'Let me ,help you!
3.9.2 'Can I ,help you?
3.9.3 'Can I .give you a ,hand?
3.9.4 'Can you ,manage?
3.10 inviting someone to do something
3.10.1 (How) Would you like to + VPinf?
   'How would you -like to come ,sailing?
3.10.2 What/How about + VP gerund
   'What about a -nice ,swim?
3.10.3 Do + VPinf
   'Do have -one of ,mine.
3.10.4 You + VPinf
   You 'must -come to ,dinner -with us.
3.11 accepting an offer or invitation
3.11.1 'Yes ,please.
3.11.2 Thank you.
3.11.3 That will be 'very ,nice.
3.11.4 I'd be glad to + VPinf
   I'd be 'glad to .come ,with you.
3.11.5 With .pleasure.
3.11.6 ,Right.
3.11.7 I'd .like/love to.
3.12 declining an offer or invitation
3.12.1 'No ,thank you.
3.12.2 (I'm 'sorry but) I can't + VPinf
   I'm 'sorry | but I 'can't ,come.
3.12.3 It's very good of you + but clause
   It's very 'good of you, | but my .wife is -ill.
3.12.4 Unfortunately I can't + VPinf
   Unfortunately | I 'can't ,eat ,cheese.
5 LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

3.12.5 I'm afraid I can't + VPinf
'I'm afraid I 'can't .leave the
.dog.

3.13 enquiring whether an offer or
invitation is accepted or
deprecated

3.13.1 Will you + VPinf (after all)
'Will you be 'coming to
dinner after .all?

3.14 asking someone for
something

3.14.1 (I'd like) NP + (please)
'I'd like a 'gin and ,tonic, .please.

3.14.2 Can I have + NP, (please)
'Can I .have a .piece of .cake?

3.14.3 Please may I have + NP
'Please may i .have ,that .one?
(See also volitional attitudes
2.23–28.)

4 Socialising

4.1 attracting attention

4.1.1 Ex'cuse ,me.

4.1.2 'Hal,lo. (informal)

4.1.3 I 'say ...

4.2 greeting people

4.2.1 'Hal,lo.

4.2.2 .Good ,morning/after,noon/
,evening (more formal)

4.3 when meeting a friend or
acquaintance

4.3.1 'How ,are you?

4.3.2 'How are you ,keeping?

4.4 replying to a greeting from a
friend or acquaintance

4.4.1 if in normal health

4.4.1.1 (I'm) 'fine ,thank you. | 'How
are ,you?

4.4.1.2 (I'm) 'very ,well .thank you |
and 'how are ,you?

4.4.2 if in poor health, etc.

4.4.2.1 'Well , 'so-so. | 'How are ,you?

4.4.3 if recovering from an illness,
etc.

4.4.3.1 'Much ,better , 'thank you. | 'How are ,you?

4.5 addressing a friend or
acquaintance

4.5.1 first name

4.5.2 greeting people

4.6 addressing a stranger

4.6.1 honorific (e.g. Professor, Dr,
Mr, Mrs, Miss + family name
'Good ,morning, ·Mrs ·Jones, | 'how are ,you to ·day?

4.7 addressing a customer or a
member of the general public

4.7.1 formal: Sir/Madam
That will be '35 ,pounds, Sir.

4.7.2 popular, familiar: Dear/Love ●
'How many do you ,want, dear?

4.7.3 informal: no address form
'Seventy-five ,pence, .please.

4.8 introducing someone to
someone else

4.8.1 formal

4.8.1.1 address form + may I
introduce + honorific + first
name + family name
Professor ·Smith, | 'may I
introduce Dr ·Anthony
,Browning?

4.8.1.2 address form: + I'd like you to
meet (+ honorific) + first name
+ family name
'Mrs ·Ale,xander, | I 'd 'like you
to ·meet ·Jonathan ·Prior.
4.8.2 informal
4.8.2.1 address form, this is + first name + family name
  'John | 'this is - Jane ,Hargreaves,
  'Jane | 'this is - John ,Smith.
4.8.2.2 first name + meet + first name
  'Jenny | 'meet ,Bill.
4.9 when being introduced to someone, or when someone is introduced to you
4.9.1 formal
4.9.1.1 'How do you ,do?
4.9.2 informal
4.9.2.1 'Pleased to ,meet you
4.9.2.2 'Hel,lo!
4.10 congratulating someone
4.10.1 Con'gratuJations!
4.10.2 'Well ,done!
4.11 proposing a toast
4.11.1 ,Cheers!
4.11.2 Your ('very) ·good ,health.
4.11.3 Here's to) + NP
  'Here's to the ·bride and 
  ,groom !
4.12 taking leave
4.12.1 formal
4.12.1.1 'Good ,morning/after noon/
  ,night.
4.12.2 informal
4.12.2.1 'Bye,-bye!
4.12.2.2 'Cheeri,o. •
4.12.2.3 (I'll) be ,seeing you 
  (to ,morrow/next ,week, etc.
4.12.3 if you are not expecting to meet again
4.12.3.1 'Good,bye.

5 Structuring discourse
5.1 opening (See also Language Functions 4.1, 4.2.)
5.1.1 on formal occasions
5.1.1.1 'Ladies and .gentlemen!
5.1.2 as participant in a meeting
5.1.2.1 'Mr/'Madam ,Chairman
5.1.2.2 'Chair ()-person) •
5.1.3 informal
5.1.3.1 ,Right!
5.1.3.2 Ahem (sound of clearing one's throat)
5.1.3.3 ,Well ·now
5.2 hesitating
5.2.1 looking for words
5.2.1.1 er ... 
5.2.1.2 ... you ·know ... 
5.2.1.3 ... now 'let me ,think 
5.2.1.4 ... 'just a ,moment 
5.2.1.5 ... 'what's the ,word for it? 
5.2.1.6 ... 'How shall I ,put it? 
5.2.2 (for forgotten name)
5.2.2.1 ... What's its/his/her ·name? 
5.2.2.2 ... What do you ·call it? 
5.2.2.3 ... ,thingumajig •
5.3 correcting oneself
5.3.1 ,No ...
5.3.2 'Sorry ... 
5.3.3 I ·mean ... 
5.3.4 That's 'not (e-xactly) what I ·meant to ,say. 
5.3.5 'Let me ·try/-·start a gain. 
5.3.6 or ·rather ...
5.3.7 that is to say ...

5.4 introducing a theme

5.4.1 I'd like to say something about + NP
I'd 'like to say -something about the -problem of pol,lution.

5.5 expressing an opinion

5.5.1 As 'I see it | ...
As 'I see it, | 'terrorists are ,murderers.

5.5.2 In 'my o,pinion, | ...
In 'my opinion, | 'most T.-V. -programmes are ,boring.

5.5.3 I 'think ...
I 'think we should ,go now.

5.6 enumerating

5.6.1 in the first place ..., in the second place ... (etc.)
In the "first -place, | 'smoking is ,bad for you, | in the "second -place, | it 'smells un,plesant.

5.6.2 First ..., then ..., then ...
'First ,order, | 'then ,eat, | 'then -pay the ,bill.

5.6.3 ... and ... and ...
'Mix to,gether | 'flour and 'milk and ,eggs.

5.6.4 For one thing ... for another ...
For 'one -thing | she is too ,young, | for a'nother | she is 'not in,telligent e-nough for ,this -job.

5.7 exemplifying

5.7.1 For example ... (written e.g.)

5.7.2 For instance ...

5.7.3 ... and so on (written etc.)

5.8 emphasising

5.8.1 in speech

5.8.1.1 use of stress
That's 'wonderful!

5.8.1.2 word order
Now 'this -picture | I 'like -very ,much.

5.8.2 in hand- or type-written texts:

5.8.2.1 use of underlining
He is very unreliable.

5.8.3 in printed texts:

5.8.3.1 use of italics
Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

5.8.3.2 use of bolding
This is most important.

5.8.3.3 use of capitals
Do NOT park here.

5.8.4 special phrases:

5.8.4.1 especially
These -cakes are e'specially -nice.

5.8.4.2 (please) note + that clause
'Please ,note | that we are ,closed on -Mondays.

5.8.4.3 it is important + that clause
(not) to + VPinf
It is im'portant to -close the ,door.

5.8.4.4 Now this is important.

5.8.4.5 I must stress the fact + that clause
I must 'stress the ,fact | that 'fire is ,dangerous.

5.9 summarising

5.9.1 to 'sum ,up ...

5.9.2 in "brief ...

5.10 changing the theme

5.10.1 'something ,else ...

5.10.2 to 'change the ,subject ...

5.10.3 I'd 'like to -say -something else.
5.11 asking someone to change the theme

5.11.1 I'd 'like to ask you something else.

5.12 asking someone's opinion

5.12.1 'What do you think?

5.12.2 'What is your opinion/view?

5.12.3 'Where do you stand on this matter?

5.13 showing that one is following a person's discourse

5.13.1 I see.

5.13.2 Yes/No.

5.13.3 Uh-huh.

5.13.4 Really.

5.13.5 In deed.

5.14 interrupting

5.14.1 Excuse me.

5.14.2 'May I come in here?

5.14.3 'May I say something?

5.14.4 'No, I'm sorry but ...

5.15 asking someone to be silent

5.15.1 Shh!

5.15.2 Quiet, please!

5.16 giving over the floor

5.16.1 'After you.

5.16.2 By all means.

5.17 indicating a wish to continue

5.17.1 'One moment please.

5.17.2 'Just a minute.

5.17.3 'Please let me finish.

5.17.4 'As I was saying ...

5.18 encouraging someone to continue

5.18.1 'Do go on.

5.19 indicating that one is coming to an end

5.19.1 'Finally ...

5.19.2 To finish. I should like to say ...

5.19.3 In conclusion ...

5.20 closing

5.20.1 at the end of a speech

5.20.2 at the end of a conversation

5.20.2.1 Well, it's been nice talking to you.

5.20.2.2 (See also Language Functions 4.12.)

5.21 opening

5.21.1 on answering a call

5.21.1.1 telephone number

5.21.1.2 Hallo (this is +) personal name + speaking

5.21.2 when initiating a call

5.21.2.1 personal name + here

5.21.2.2 This is + personal name

5.22 asking for:

5.22.1 a person
5.22.1.1 (Can I speak to) + personal name + please?
'Can I speak to George, please?'
5.22.1.2 Could you put me through to + personal name + please?
'Could you put me through to Mr Oakham, please?'
5.22.2 extension
5.22.2.1 extension + number + please
'Extension one six, please.'
5.23 asking someone to wait
5.23.1 'Hold the line, please.'
5.23.2 'Just a moment, please.'
5.24 asking whether you are heard and understood
5.24.1 'Are you still there?'
5.24.2 'Can you hear me?'
5.25 giving signals that you are hearing and understanding
See Language Functions 5.13.
5.26 announcing new call
I'll call back again later this evening, etc.
5.27 opening
5.27.1 if name is known
5.27.1.1 Dear + address form (cf. Language Functions 4.5, 4.6)
'Dear Professor Jones.'
5.27.2 if name is not known
5.27.2.1 Dear Sir/Madam
5.28 closing
5.28.1 following 5.27.1.1
5.28.1.1 Yours sincerely...
5.28.1.2 (With) best wishes...
5.28.1.3 Love (from)...
5.28.2 following 5.27.2.1
Yours faithfully...
6 Communication repair
(See also Chapter 12: Compensation Strategies.)
6.1 signalling non-understanding
6.1.1 'Sorry, I don't understand.'
6.2 asking for repetition of sentence
6.2.1 (I 'beg your) 'pardon?
6.2.2 'What did you say please?
6.2.3 ('Sorry) 'could you say that again (please)?
6.2.4 'Could you repeat that please?
6.3 asking for a repetition of a word or phrase
6.3.1 (sorry +) wh question
'Sorry, where does she live?
6.3.2 (sorry +) wh did you say + interrogative clause
'Sorry, what did you say his name was?
6.4 asking for confirmation of text
6.4.1 Did you say: X?
'Did you say anchovies?
6.5 asking for confirmation or understanding
6.5.1 Do you mean to say + that clause?
'Do you mean to say that they aren't coming?
6.6 asking for clarification
6.6.1 (Sorry) What does X mean?
'What does anglophile mean?
6.6.2 What do you mean by X?
'What do you mean by good?
6.6.3 What is X?
'What is ·kicking the bucket?'

6.6.4 'Could you ex,plain that, ·please?'

6.7 asking someone to spell something
6.7.1 'Could you ,spell that, ·please?'

6.8 asking for something to be written down
6.8.1 'Could you ·write that,down for me, ·please?'

6.9 expressing ignorance of a word or expression
(See also Language Functions 5.2.)
6.9.1 I 'don't ·know ·how to ,say it.

6.9.2 I 'don't ·know ·what you ·call it.

6.9.3 I 'don't ·know the ·word in ·English.

6.9.4 In (native language) we say ...
In 'German we ·say
Ver,dienst ·Kreuz.

6.10 appealing for assistance
6.10.1 What is the English for + (native language word)?
'What is the ·English for ,funghi?'

6.10.2 What is (native language word) in English?
'What is framboise in ·English?'

6.10.3 How do you say (native language word) in English?
'How do you say ·hasta la ·vista in ·English?'

6.10.4 ... What do you call it?

6.10.5 ... you know ...
'it's a ... 'you ·know ...

6.10.6 ... er ...
'·found a ... er ... er ...

6.11 asking someone to speak more slowly
6.11.1 ('Can you ·speak) 'more ,slowly, ·please.

6.11.2 'Not so ,fast, ·please.

6.12 paraphrasing
6.12.1 a/some kind/sort of + generic term
'some ·kind of, animal

6.12.2 something like + related term
'something ·like a ·cabbage

6.12.3 something/generic term + relative clause
'something you ·make with ,eggs

6.13 repeating what one has said
6.13.1 X (simply repeated as spoken)
'They'll ·come at '5 o,'clock.

6.13.2 X (repeated more slowly and without phonetic reduction)
6.13.3 I said X
'I ·said 'seven ·hundred.

6.13.4 What I said was X
'What I ·said ,was: 'Don't ·walk on the ·grass.

6.13.5 I said that + indirect speech form or close paraphrase
'I ·said that I was 'very ·tired.

6.14 asking if you have been understood
6.14.1 'Is that ·clear (·now)?

6.14.2 'Do you understand (·now)?
6.15 spelling out a word or expression
6.15.1 spelling out English letter names
   M- O- N- K- E- Y- S
6.15.2 X is spelt: ...
   Tough is spelt T- O- U- G- H.
6.15.3 You spell it: ...
   You spell it B- R- I- G- H- T.
6.16 supplying a word or expression

6.16.1 Do you mean X?
   'Do you -mean ,mushroom?
6.16.2 Perhaps you mean X?
   Per'haps you -mean ,raspberry?
6.16.3 I think you mean X?
   I 'think you -mean a ,badge.
6.16.4 X (perhaps)?
   ,Service -Cross per-haps?
6 General notions

Introduction

The list of general notions is derived from a consideration of what, in general, people deal with by means of language, of what concepts they may be likely to refer to whatever the specific features of a particular communication situation may be.

We present the general notions under eight headings:

1 existential
2 spatial
3 temporal
4 quantitative
5 qualitative
6 mental
7 relational
8 deixis

The following list indicates the sub-classes of the notions selected and presents the various notions in the form of their exponents. Strictly speaking, we should have presented each notion and its exponent(s) separately, but since the large majority of the notions would then have to be referred to by means of the corresponding exponent – the lexical item *among* is the exponent of the notion *among* – this would have led to almost constant duplication without any practical gain.

General notions for *Threshold Level* including recommended exponents

1 **Existential**

1.1 *existence, non-existence*

There is + NP
There’s no + NP

1.2 *presence, absence*

here, not here, there, not there, away

1.3 *availability, non availability*

to have (got)
There is + NP
There’s no + NP
There isn’t any + NP

deixis

the verbs to exist, to become,
to make (as in: She ‘made a new dress.)
ready (as in 'When will it be ready?)

1.4 occurrence, non-occurrence to happen

2 Spatial

2.1 location

the following adverbs: here, there, everywhere, somewhere, nowhere, (not) anywhere, where?; inside, outside (in) the east/north/south/west to have been to (as in: She has been to 'Paris.)

distance

distance (as in: The 'distance from A to B is 'five miles.)

2.2 relative position

the following prepositions of position:

above ⬆️, against ⬅️, among ⬅️, at, at the end of, at the side of, before ⬅️, behind ⬗️, below ⬇️, beside ⬗️, between ⬇️, in, in front of, inside ⬅️, in the centre of, next to, on, opposite, outside, over, round, under, where + sub-clause ⬇️

2.3 distance

far (away) from, near, in the neighbourhood of ⬇️, ... away (as in: It is 'two miles away.)

2.4 motion

the following verbs of motion: to arrive, to come, to come along ⬆️, to come + to NP (as in: He 'came to the house.), to fall, to get up, to go, to hurry, to leave (as in: We have to, leave -now.), to lie down, to start, to move (as in: The -car 'did not move.), to pass (as in: You 'pass the railway station.), to run, to stand still ⬆️, to stop (as in: The 'train, stopped.), to walk

2.5 direction

direction

In 'which direction is Slough?

the following adverbs: away, back, down (as in: 'Are you going, down?)

left, (to the) right, straight on, up (as in: 'Are you going, up?)

the following prepositions:

east (as in: He went east.), north, south, west

2.6 origin

from (as in: We came from London.), out of

2.7 arrangement

after (as in: 'B comes -after .A.), before (as in: 'A -comes before .B.), between, among, first (as in: 'John -came ,first.), last (as in: 'Peter -came ,last.)

2.8 dimension

2.8.1 size

size (as in: 'What -size shoes do you -take?)

the following adjectives: big, deep, high, large ⬆️, low, narrow ⬆️, short, small, tall, thick, thin, wide

2.8.2 length

centimetre, foot, inch, kilometre, metre, mile, millimetre, yard
GENERAL NOTIONS

2.8.3 pressure
heavy, light (as in: I want a 'light blanket.), high, low

2.8.4 weight
to weigh ●
weight
gram(me)s, kilo, lbs., oz., ton(ne)
the adjectives light and heavy

2.8.5 volume
gallon, litre, pint

2.8.6 space
big, small
room (as in: You have 'plenty of room here.)

2.8.7 temperature
temperature (as in: The temperature is 'too high for me.), degree, zero (as in: It's ten degrees below zero.)
cold, cool, hot, warm
to boil, to burn, to freeze,
to heat, to get cold/hot/warm

3 Temporal

3.1 points of time
(three) o'clock
(five) to/past (three)
a quarter to/past (three)
(sixteen) minutes to/past (three)
half past (three)
(3) a.m./p.m. ●
noon ●, midnight ●
1500 (fifteen hundred), 1518 (fifteen eighteen)
at ...

3.2 divisions of time
moment, second, minute,
quarter of an hour, half (an) hour, hour, day, week.

fortnight ●, month, year,
century
season, autumn, spring,
summer, winter
afternoon, evening, morning,
night, weekend, holiday(s)
the names of days of the week, names of months

indicators of time
time (as in: 'What time is it?)
now, then, when?, soon, ago (as in: 'two days ago)
today, tomorrow, yesterday,
the day before yesterday, the day after tomorrow
this morning/afternoon/
evening/week/month/year,
tonight last/next + week/ month/year
prepositions: at (as in: at 'three o'clock, at 'twenty past (three), at, midnight), by ●
(as in: by 'three o'clock), in
(as in: in 'three days, in a week, in summer, in the autumn, in '1989), on (as in: on Sunday, on the 'first of June)
dates: (spoken) the first of June
(written) 1 June 1989
Christmas, Easter

duration
prepositions: during ● (as in: 'during the holidays), for (as in: for 'three hours), since (as in: since '1945), till, until ●,
not ... till (as in: He 'won't be here till 'three o'clock.)
to last (as in: It lasts 'three hours.), to take (as in: It takes 'three hours.)
adjectives: long (as in: a 'long time), short (as in: a 'short time), quick (as in: a 'quick meal)
3.5 earliness
early (as in: You are 'early;
There’s an 'early ·train on
,Mondays.)

3.6 lateness
late (as in: We’ll ·have to
‘hurry, | we are 'late; We were
‘too ·late for the ·train; We ·went
to the ·late ·show.)

3.7 anteriority
present perfect (as in: I
‘haven’t ‘seen ·John | ,yet; I’ve
·been to ·Paris.)
past perfect (as in: I ‘hadn’t
,done it.)
before + NP/sub-clause
before (as in: I’d ‘never ·done it
before.)
already (as in: I have al'ready
,done it.)
yet (as in: ‘Has he ,come ·yet?:
He ‘hasn’t ,come ·yet.)
earlier than ...

3.8 posteriority
after + NP/sub-clause
afterwards, later (on)
later than ...

3.9 sequence
first (as in: ‘First we ·went to
Ma,drid.), then (as in: ‘First we
·went to Ma,drid, | ‘then we
·travelled to Gib,raltar.), next ●
(as in: ‘What did you ·do ,next?),
finally (as in: ‘Finally | we ·went
,back.), later on ●, in the end ●,
afterwards

3.10 simultaneousness
when + sub-clause ●, while + sub-clause ●, as soon as + sub-
clause ●
at the same time

3.11 future reference
NP + be going to ...
NP + will ...
present continuous of verbs of
motion
simple present (with
adverbials of future time)
(as in: We ‘leave at .midnight.)
soon
in (as in: in 'four ,weeks)
next week/month/year/Sunday,
etc.
tonight, tomorrow, the day
after tomorrow, this afternoon

3.12 present reference
present continuous
simple present
present perfect
at present, now, today, still,
(as in: He is ·still ·working.)
this morning/afternoon/year
etc.

3.13 past reference
past continuous
simple past
yesterday, the day before
yesterday, formerly, just,
recently ●, lately ●, last
week/month, etc.

3.14 reference without time focus
simple present (as in:
‘Edinburgh is in ·Scotland.)

3.15 delay
later (as in: The 'train will
come ,later.)
delay ● (as in: There will
be a de,lay.)
to be delayed ● (as in: The
'train will be de,layed.)

3.16 speed
fast, slow
... miles/kilometres per hour

3.17 frequency
always, (hardly) ever, never,
(not) often, once, rarely,
seldom ●, sometimes, twice,
usually
daily ●, weekly ●, monthly ●
(as in: There are 'daily ,flights.)

once every day ●
... times a/per week/month, etc.
on weekdays/Sundays, etc.
every week/Sunday, etc.

3.18 continuity
present continuous
past continuous
present perfect (as in: I've 'lived ·here for ·two ,years.)
to go on (as in: It will ·go on for 'five ,years.)

3.19 intermittence
not always, sometimes, on and off

3.20 permanence
always, for ever, for good

3.21 temporariness
for + NP (as in: You can 'have my ·car for a ,week.)
not always
present continuous
past continuous (as in: He is/ was ·living in 'Scotland for ·some ·months.)

3.22 repetitiousness
again, many times, twice, several times ●, again and again ●

3.23 uniqueness
(only) once

3.24 commencement
to begin ●, to start (as in: The 'game ·started at ,seven; He 'started to ·speak.)
to go ...(as in: 'Let's ·go ,sailing.)
since (as in: I've ·been here since '7 a.,m.), from (as in: I ·work from '9 to ,12.)

3.25 cessation
to end ●, to finish ●, to stop
(as in: The ·game will 'stop at ,six; He 'stopped ,talking.)
till, until ●, to (as in: from '9 to ,12)

3.26 stability
to remain ● (as in: 'How ·long will you re-main ·here; 'Will it re-main ,dry today?)
to stay (as in: I will 'stay here for a ·week; It 'won't ·stay ·dry for ·'long.), to keep (as in: 'How ·long will this ·milk ·keep ·fresh?), to wait (as in: We ·had to ·wait ·only 'five ·minutes.)

3.27 change, transition
to become (as in: 'Sugar has become expensive.), to change, to get ● (as in: He's ·getting ·old.), to turn (as in: The ·leaves ·turned ·yellow.)
suddenly ...

4 Quantitative

4.1 number

singular/plural
cardinal numerals
ordinal numerals
another (as in: 'May I have a-nother ·cup of ,tea, ·please?),
about (as in: I have about £25.)

4.2 quantity

the following determiners: all, a lot of, any (also: hardly any, not any), both, each, enough, (a) few, (a) little, many, more, most, much, no, several, some half (as in: 'Give me ·half of it; 'Give me the ·other ·half; 'Give me ·half a ·bottle.)
at least (as in: I ·need at ·least £5.)
a bottle/box/cup/glass, packet/piece, etc. of...
See further General Notions 2.8.

4.3 \textit{degree}
comparative and superlative
degrees of adjectives and
adverbs
enough (as in: 'good enough),
too ..., very ...
a bit (as in: a 'bit better; a
'bit tired) $\bullet$, a little (as
in: a 'little better; a 'little
tired), a lot (as in: a 'lot
better) $\bullet$, much (as in: 'much
better), almost, hardly $\bullet$,
quite (as in: 'quite old),
rather (as in: 'rather old), so
(as in: I'm so sorry!)
such (as in: It was 'such
'fun! He is 'such a 'nice boy!)
even (as in: I've 'even paid
'£5.)

5 \textbf{Qualitative}

5.1 \textit{physical}

5.1.1 shape
adjectives: round, square

5.1.2 dimension
See General Notions 2.8.

5.1.3 moisture, humidity
dry, wet, damp, moist
to dry, to (make) wet

5.1.4 visibility, sight
NP + can(not) see + NP
NP + can(not) be seen $\bullet$
to look (as in: 'Don't look
'now!'), to look at, to watch
adjectives: dark, light,
(in)visible

5.1.5 audibility, hearing
NP + can(not) hear + NP
NP + can(not) be heard $\bullet$
to listen, to listen to
nouns: noise, silence $\bullet$, sound
adjectives: loud, silent $\bullet$, soft,
quiet

5.1.6 taste
to taste (as in: 'How does your
soup taste?; 'Would you like to
taste this?)
taste (as in: I don't like the
'taste.)
adjectives: bad, nice, bitter,
salty, sour, sweet

5.1.7 smell
to smell (of) (as in: The 'food
smells good; 'Can you smell
gas?; It smells of paint.)
smell (as in: The flower has a
'nice smell.), odour $\bullet$,
perfume $\bullet$
adjectives: bad, nice,
pleasant, unpleasant

5.1.8 texture
adjectives: hard, rough,
smooth $\bullet$, soft, strong,
weak $\bullet$

5.1.9 colour
colour
adjectives: blue, black, brown,
green, grey, orange, red, white,
yellow; light (as in: a ,light
. colour; 'light blue), bright,
dull, dark (as in: a ,dark . colour;
'dark blue)

5.1.10 age
age $\bullet$
I am ... (years old)
How old are you (is he/she,
etc.)?
adjectives: new, old, young
nouns: adult, baby, child
month (as in: Her baby is 'six
months old.), year

5.1.11 physical condition
adjectives: alive, all right,
better (as in: He got better.),
dead, ill, well
in/out of order (as in: The telephone is out of order.)
to look (as in: You look very well.)
to break, to cut (as in: I've cut my finger.), to (be) hurt,
to die, to fasten, to tie, to repair, to put right

5.1.12 accessibility

to close (as in: The shop closes at six.)
to get at, to open, to reach
adjectives: closed, open

5.1.13 cleanness

to clean, to wash, (to) dust, (to) polish
adjectives: clean, dirty

5.1.14 material

nouns and adjectives:
cotton, glass, leather, metal, nylon, paper, plastic, silk, silver
nouns: wood, wool made of wood, wooden, made of wool, woollen
material

5.1.15 genuineness

real (as in: Is this real leather?)

5.1.16 fullness

adjectives: empty, full (of)
to fill

5.2 evaluative

5.2.1 value, price

How much + be ... ? (as in: 'How much are these shoes?)
to cost
noun: price
adjectives: cheap, (in)expensive, high, low

5.2.2 quality

noun: quality
adjectives: hard, worse, worst
poor
good, better, best; excellent, fine, nice
adverb: well (as in: He can write English very well.)

5.2.3 rightness, wrongness

NP + should (not) + VPinf
NP + ought to + VPinf
adjectives: right, wrong

5.2.4 acceptability, unacceptability

That's all right.
That's fine/nice.
I don't like it.
I cannot accept ...
I'm against ...

5.2.5 adequacy, inadequacy

NP + be all right
NP + be (not) enough
That will do.

5.2.6 desirability, undesirability
to like
See also Language Functions 2.32–2.36.

5.2.7 correctness, incorrectness

adjectives: better, correct, incorrect, false, right, true, wrong, OK
to be right, to be wrong, to put something right, to make something better

5.2.8 successfulness, unsuccesfulness
to fail, to succeed, to try
failure, success
(un-)successful

5.2.9 utility, inutility

(not) useful, useless
NP + can(not) use ...

5.2.10 capacity, incapacity

NP + can(not) ...
NP + will/won't ...
NP + be able to ...
6 GENERAL NOTIONS

5.2.1 importance, unimportance
(not) important, unimportant

5.2.2 normality, abnormality
normal, strange, ordinary

5.2.3 facility, difficulty
easy, difficult, hard (as in: His English is 'hard to understand.)
difficulty

6 Mental

6.1 reflection
to believe, to be sure, to be certain, to hope, to know, to remember, to think, to wonder
no doubt
See also Language Functions 2.5–2.8, 2.13–2.14.

6.2 expression
to answer, to apologise, to ask, to forbid, to invite, to laugh, to recommend, to request (as in: Guests are requested to leave their keys at the desk.), to say, to speak, to talk, to tell, to thank, to write nouns: answer, question, statement

7 Relational

7.1 spatial relations
See General Notions 2.2, 2.3, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7.

7.2 temporal relations

7.3 action/event relations

7.3.1 agency
agent as subject
agent in by adjunct (passive)
agent in emphatic: It was X who ...

7.3.2 objective/factive
objective as object (as in: John opened the door.)
objective as subject of passive (as in: The door was opened by John.)
factive as object (as in: She made a new dress.)
factive as subject of passive (as in: This cathedral was built in the thirteenth century.)

7.3.3 dative
dative as indirect object (as in: He gave me a book.)
dative in to adjunct (as in: He gave the ticket to my brother)
dative as subject of passive (as in: He was given a book.)

7.3.4 instrumental
instrumental in with adjunct (as in: You can open the door with this key.)

7.3.5 benefactive
benefactive in for adjunct (as in: I have bought this for my wife.)

7.3.6 causative
to have (as in: Can I have my shirt washed, please?)

7.3.7 place
See General Notions, Section 2.

7.3.8 time
See General Notions, Section 3.

7.3.9 manner, means
in this way, like this
by means of ...
by + Ving
as (as in: They use it as a fork.)
adverbs: badly, fast, hard (as in: We have to work very hard.), how?, quickly, slowly, well
7.4 contrastive relations

7.4.1 equality, inequality
(not) the same (thing) (as ...)
to differ ●
difference ●
different (from), else (as in: 'Anything ,else?), other,
another (as in: 'Give me a,other (=different) .book.)

7.4.2 correspondence
in addition to the exponents of 7.4.1: like (as in: It's ·like an 'orange.)
comparative degree + than (as in: 'John is ·older than his ·brother; 'John ·works ·harder than his ·brother.)
superlative degree (as in: He is the 'tallest ·boy in the ·class.)
as ... as ● (as in: He is as 'big as his ·brother.)
not so ... as ● (as in: He is 'not so ,big as his ·brother.)

7.5 possessive relations

7.5.1 ownership, possession
possessive adjectives (my, your, etc.)
possessive pronouns (mine, yours, etc.)● (as in: 'This is ·mine.; as subject (as in: 'Mine is ·better.)
genitive singular of personal nouns
of adjuncts
with adjuncts, without adjuncts
(as in: You 'cannot ·travel here without a ,passport.)
to belong to ... ●, to have
(got) (as in: I have ·got a 'small ,car.), to get (as in: I ·got a 'nice ,present from him.),
to give, to keep (as in: 'May ! ,keep this?), to own ●, owner ●,
own (as in: This is my 'own ,book.)

7.6 logical relations

7.6.1 conjunction
and, as well as ●, but, also, too
(as in: 'John is ·leaving | ,too.),
not ... either (as in: 'I cannot ·swim | 'either.)
together
pair (as in: I 'want to ·buy a ·pair of ,shoes.), group (as in: a 'group of ,friends)

7.6.2 disjunction
or

7.6.3 inclusion/exclusion
with (as in: We are 'going to ·take him ,with us.), without (as in: We are 'not ·going with,out him.)
except ● (as in: We 'all ·went,
except ,John.)
also, too (as in: 'John is leaving | 'too.)

7.6.4 cause
Why ...?
because + sub-clause, as + sub-clause ●

7.6.5 effect
then ..., so ... (as in: He ,ate too ·much, | so he 'did not ·feel ·well.), so ... that ● (as in: He ate 'so ,much | that he 'fell ,ill.)
the result ·is ... ●

7.6.6 reason
Why ...?
because + sub-clause
since + sub-clause
the reason is ... ●

7.6.7 purpose
to ... (as in: He 'came to ,help me.)
in order to ... ●
the purpose is ... ●

7.6.8 condition
if + sub-clause
7.6.9 focusing
about (as in: I 'don't -want to talk about the -war.), on (as in: I 'cannot -give you -any information on -train -services.)
only (as in: I 'only -wanted to 'help.)

8 Deixis

Deixis involves referring or identifying by means of linguistic items belonging to closed sets the reference of which is dependent upon the context of the utterance (e.g. time, place, persons involved). Deixis may be definite or indefinite (he vs. someone), non-anaphoric or anaphoric (i.e. referring to an item already mentioned) ('Why don't you ,come? vs. I 'll 'buy those ,books | because I 'need them.)

8.1. definite
8.1.1 non-anaphoric
personal pronouns (subject forms and object forms)
possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.
possessive pronouns as complement (as in: 'This is mine.)
possessive pronouns as subject (as in: 'Mine is better.)
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns: this, that, these, those, such
independent relative pronoun:
what (as in: 'What you -say is true.)
definite article: the
interrogative pronouns: who, whom, whose, which, that, omission of relative pronoun
reflexive/emphatic pronouns: my -self, yourself, etc. (as in: I hurst myself; I've 'done it my -self.)
reciprocal pronoun: each other
definite article: the
adverbs: here, there, now, then, so (as in: He 'wanted to go -out | but he 'didn't ,say so.)
prop word: one, ones (as in: I like the red one.)
substitute-verb: do (as in: He 'asked me to 'help him, | and I did.)

8.2 indefinite
indefinite article: a, an
indefinite pronouns: someone, somebody, no one, (not) ... anybody, (not) ... anyone, nobody, each, everybody, everyone, something, (not) ... anything, nothing, everything, all (as in: They 'all went .home; I 'want 'all of it.), both (as in: They 'both went ,home; I -want ,both of them.)
some (as in: 'Some of them went home.); it (as in: it's raining.); you (as in: It's a nice record if you like modern music.)

indefinite determiners:
See General Notions 4.2.

adverbs: somewhere, nowhere, everywhere, (not) ... anywhere, sometimes, never, always

semi-deictics: person (as in: There are five persons present.); man (as in: There were animals here before man came.); people (as in: What do people think about the government?; There are five people present.); thing (as in: What do you call that thing?); do (as in: What are you going to do tonight?)
7 Specific notions

Introduction

In the following list the specific notions for Threshold Level are arranged under 14 themes:

1 personal identification
2 house and home, environment
3 daily life
4 free time, entertainment
5 travel
6 relations with other people
7 health and body care
8 education
9 shopping
10 food and drink
11 services
12 places
13 language
14 weather

The themes may relate to the situational context in which particular transactions may take place (e.g. buying something in a shop) as well as to topics for communicative interaction (e.g. talking about shopping facilities). Under the title of each theme an indication is given as to what learners at Threshold Level may be expected to be able to do with regard to it. These indications are necessarily incomplete and are to be supplemented from other components of our specification.

To facilitate reference, the specific notions are further arranged under sub-themes. In the same way as the general notions, the specific notions are indicated by means of their (recommended) exponents (see the introduction to the list of general notions). Alternative exponents of essentially the same notion are presented thus: first name/Christian name/forename/given name. In such a case the learner should be able to use at least one of them productively but to understand all the others.

The specification contains several open-ended items indicated by italics (e.g. names of occupations). In these cases we leave it to materials designers, teachers and learners to identify those specific notions, if
any, which suit their own purposes. In order to provide some guidance as to those notions, which, in our view, might be primarily considered we add, in a number of cases, a list of them preceded by 'e.g.' It should be understood, however, that the notions in such lists are merely offered by way of suggestion and have not got the status of definitely recommended ones. If a word may be used in different meanings, the meaning intended usually follows from its inclusion under a particular sub-theme (e.g. tip under 'eating and drinking out') or it is clarified by means of contextualisation (e.g. letter: What's the last letter of your name?). These illustrative sentences have no other role than clarification of the meaning of the word involved; they are not meant as recommended phrases for inclusion in course materials.

**Specific notions for Threshold Level including recommended exponents**

1 **Personal identification**

The learners can say who they are, spell their name, state their address, give their telephone number, say when and where they were born, state their age, sex, say whether they are married or not, state their nationality, say where they are from, what they do for a living, describe their family, state their religion, if any, state their likes and dislikes, say what other people are like; elicit/understand similar information from others.

1.1 name

name
to be/to be called
He's (-called), Bill.
to sign
signature
letter
'What's the last letter of your name?

1.2 address

to live
'Where do you live?

names of roads etc. e.g. park, road, square, street

number
'I live at number fifteen.
country
'I live in the country.
town/city
village

names of countries e.g. Britain, Germany, Russia, Spain, Switzerland, the United States

names of cities e.g. Athens, Basle, Brussels, Cologne, Copenhagen, Florence, Lisbon, The Hague, Vienna

1.3 telephone number
(See also Specific Notions 11.2.)

telephone
'Have you got a telephone?
to call/to phone/to ring up
telephone number
0 (pronounced [au] in telephone numbers)

1.4 date and place of birth
to be born
I was born in London on ...
date
place
birthday

names of the months
the required numerals

1.5 age
See General Notions 5.1.10.

1.6 sex

sex ●
man
woman
boy
girl
male ●
female ●
gentleman (as on lavatory doors) ●
ladies (as on lavatory doors) ●

1.7 marital status
(not/un)-married
single ●
divorced
separated ●
widowed ●
widow
widower

1.8 nationality

nationality ●

names of nationalities e.g. American, Cypriot, Dutch, French, German, Swiss

foreign
foreigner

1.9 origin
to be from ...
I'm from London.
'Where are you from?
to come from ...

1.10 occupation

job/occupation/profession
to do

What do you do (for a living)?

names of occupations

e.g. baker, businessman, businesswoman, butcher, civil servant, doctor/physician, greengrocer, grocer, labourer, nurse, clerk, salesman, saleswoman, secretary, shop-assistant, soldier, teacher, tradesman, typist; farm worker, office worker

names of places of work

e.g. factory, farm, hospital, office, school, shop

names of occupational activities
e.g. to buy, to teach, to sell, to work (as in: I work in an office.)

worker/employee
boss/employer
manager
firm/company
to work
'Where do you work?

1.11 family
family
'Have you brought your family?
'Have you any family?
parents/father and mother
child
baby
husband
wife
names of relatives
e.g. aunt, brother, cousin,
daughter, father, grandchild,
grandfather, grandmother,
mother, sister, uncle

1.12 religion
religion

names of religions e.g.
Christianity (Christian, Orthodox, Catholic, Protestant), Islam (Muslim), Judaism (Jew), atheism (atheist)
god
God
to believe in ...
church
cathedral

temple

mosque
service

There are three services on Sundays.

1.13 likes and dislikes
See Language Functions 2.32–34, objects of likes and dislikes to be derived from other themes.

1.14 character, disposition
What sort of ...
'What sort of man/woman/ etc., is he/she?
kind
He is a very kind person.
nice
good
bad
(un)pleasant
quiet
active
lazy
(un-)intelligent
(un-)generous

1.15 physical appearance
tall
short
fat
thin
slim
pretty
beautiful
plain
ugly
dark (-haired)

fair (-haired)
bald
2 House and home, environment

The learners can describe a house or flat and the rooms in it, refer to furniture and bedclothes, cost, services and amenities, describe regions and natural environment; obtain/understand similar descriptions and references from others; exchange views on these matters.

2.1 types of accommodation
house
flat
apartment ●
building
I 'have a ,flat | in a 'big ,building.
(un-)furnished
to buy
to rent

2.2 accommodation, rooms
room
We have 'two ,rooms | on the 'ground ,floor.
We have 'plenty of ,room .here.
names of rooms
e.g. bathroom, bedroom, cellar, kitchen, lavatory/toilet/w.c., living-room
floor
The 'bedrooms | are on the 'first ,floor.
basement ●
stairs
downstairs
The 'kitchen is -down,stairs.
'Let's go down,stairs.
upstairs
The 'bathroom is up,stairs.
'Let's go up,stairs.
lift
window
door
wall
cupboard ●
garden

2.3 furniture, bedclothes
furniture
names of pieces of furniture
e.g. bed, chair, curtain, desk, lamp, table
blanket
pillow
sheet
quilt

2.4 cost
(See also General Notions 5.2.1.)
price
to be
The 'room is '£55 per ,week.
rent
to let
'Rooms to -let.
for sale
'House for -sale.
included ●
'Water is included in the ,rent.

2.5 services
electricity
gas
heating
central heating
telephone
water
on
The 'heating is ,on.
off
The 'heating is ,off.
to turn on
'Turn on the ,light ,please.
to turn off
'How do you turn off the heating?'

2.6 amenities
bath
shower
fridge
television
radio
garage
washing-machine
to clean
The rooms are cleaned 'twice a week.
to wash
You can wash your clothes down, stairs.

2.7 region
part of the country
In 'our part of the country | there are many factories.
area ●
farmland ●
industry ●
farm
factory
fields
forest/wood
hill
lake
valley
mountain
canal
river
sea
seaside ●
coast ●
beach
island
water
land
top
We could see the 'tops of the mountains.
bottom
We could see the 'bottom of the lake.
flat
'Our part of the country | is 'quite, flat.

2.8 flora and fauna
animal
pet
names of animals, birds, fish, insects
e.g. bird, cat, cow, dog, fish, fly, goat, horse, insect, pig, sheep
plant
tree
flower
bush
names of plants, trees, flowers
e.g. daffodil, fuchsia, grass, oak, pine
3 Daily life

The learners can describe their daily routines, at home and at work, can give information about income, schooling and prospects; obtain/understand similar information from others; exchange views on these matters.

3.1 at home
(See also Specific Notions, Section 4.)
to wake up
to get up
to wash
to take a bath
to take a shower
to get (un-)dressed
to have breakfast, etc.

names of meals
e.g. breakfast, lunch, tea, dinner, supper
to cook
I’ll ‘cook din,ner for you.
to make
‘Shall I ‘make a ‘pot of ,tea?
to wash up
to clean
I ‘clean the ‘windows ‘once a ,week.
to go shopping
to go to school
to go to work
to come home
to go to bed
to go to sleep

spare time

3.2 at work
(See also Specific Notions 1.10.)

working hours
to start work
to stop work
break
holiday(s)
canteen
free
We get a ‘free ,meal | ‘every ,day.
to be free
We are ‘free | on ,Saturdays.
days off
We have 'two -days -off a ,week.
colleague
(on) strike
unemployment
social security/social benefits

3.3 income
income/salary/wages
to earn
tax(es)
pension
grant ●
allowance ●

3.4 schooling
See Specific Notions, Section 8.

3.5 prospects
to become
I ‘may become a ,doctor.
to learn
to study
to qualify as
to apply (for)
I ‘won’t apply for ‘that ·job.
4 Free time, entertainment

The learners can say when they are free and what they do in their spare time, particularly with reference to hobbies and interests, public entertainment and private pursuits, mass media, sports and reading; obtain/understand similar information from others; exchange views on these matters; make use of entertainment facilities.

4.1 leisure
to be free
I'm free after six.
free time/spare time/leisure
holiday(s)
to go out

4.1 hobbies and interests
(See also Language Functions 2.32–34.)
hobby
names of hobbies
e.g. carpentry, collecting stamps, fishing, gardening, knitting, photography, sailing
names of fields of interest
e.g. computers, films, music, politics, sports
to go for ... I always go for a walk on Sundays.

4.3 radio, TV, etc.
radio
to listen to (the radio)
television/TV
to watch (TV)
cable television
network
programme
names of radio/TV programmes
e.g. current affairs, comedy, documentary, drama, film, news, quiz, commercials
cassette recorder
tape recorder ●
tape
cassette
walkman ●
video recorder
videotape
record/gramophone record
record player
CD/compact disc
CD player
to play
'Let's play your new record.'
song
names of types of music
e.g. classical, folk, jazz, modern music, pop music
to show
'What are they showing on T.V tonight?'
cinema, theatre
names of places for public entertainment concert, etc.
e.g. cabaret, cinema, circus, disco, night-club, theatre
names of public performances
e.g. ballet, concert, film, floor show, musical, opera, revue, show
names of types of performers
e.g. actor, actress, ballet dancer, disc jockey, (film) star, musician, pop star, singer
names of musical instruments
e.g. flute, piano, violin, guitar
to dance
to play
'Who is playing Hamlet?
She plays the guitar.
to sing
performance ●
ticket
'I'll get the tickets.
ticket office ●
booking office ●
afternoon performance ●
matinee ●
seat
row ●
We have seats in row five.
front
We have seats in the front.
centre
back
'Two seats at the back, please.
entrance ●
exit ●
emergency exit ●
cloakroom ●
lavatory/toilet/w.c.
programme
'Shall I buy a programme?
interval ●

4.5 exhibitions, museums, etc.
museum
gallery ●
art gallery ●
exhibition ●
art
picture/painting
sculpture ●
modern
old
antique ●
open
'Open on Sundays | 2–5 p.m.
opening-hours ●
closed
to close
The museum closes at six.
closing time

4.6 intellectual and artistic pursuits
to read
to study
to learn
book
story
poem
names of types of books
e.g. biography, detective story,

4.7 novel, short story, spy story,
thriller
bookshop
library
to write
to make
He made a picture of a bridge.
names of art forms
e.g. painting, photography,
sculpture

4.8 sports
sport(s)

4.9 names of sports and games
e.g. baseball, chess, cricket,
football, hockey, (horse) racing,
riding, snooker, (lawn) tennis,
rugby, skiing, swimming
to play
I've never played hockey.
(playing-) cards
to watch
race
to race
68 7 SPECIFIC NOTIONS

game
to win
to lose
draw
The 'game -ended in a ,draw.
player
team
club
field
ground
We 'live near the ,football 
ground.
stadium
ball

game against
We 'saw -England against 
France | in '6,8.

to win
to lose
draw

4.8 press
newspaper/paper
magazine
'Let's -buy some maga,zines.
article
picture
advertisement
page
reporter/journalist
to read

5 Travel
The learners can use and refer to means of transport; travel by road, 
rail, sea and air for business and holiday purposes.

5.1 public transport
to go
'How can I -go to ,Liverpool?
to travel
traveller ●
passenger ●
to travel by air, train, bus, etc.
journey
aeroplane ●
plane
airport
airline
terminal
Your 'flight is from 'terminal ,A.
to check in
boarding-pass ●
flight ●
'Flight 'KL 17,5 | has 'just ar,rived. En'joy your ,flight.
charter flight ●
to fly
security (as in: security check) ●
gate ●
The 'flight to -New ,York | is from 'gate ,10.
to board
stewardess/hostess
bus
couch
bus stop
driver
train
underground
'Let's -take the ,underground.
(railway) station
railways ●
platform
Our 'train -leaves from 'platform ,10.
to change
For 'Leeds | you •have to -change at 'Sheffield.
connection
We'll 'miss our connection to Reading!
fast train
slow train
tram
tram stop
boat
ferry ⚫
ship ⚫
quay
harbour ⚫
taxi/cab
taxi rank/cab rank
taxi driver, cab driver ⚫
booking-office
to book
time table
fare ⚫
'What's the fare to Liverpool?
ticket
adult
'One adult and 'two children.
single
'Two singles to Brighton, please.
return
A return ticket is cheaper than two singles.
class
I 'always travel second class.
business class ⚫
tourist class ⚫
to smoke
waiting-room
lounge
arrival ⚫
departure ⚫
luggage/baggage
lost property office ⚫
travel bureau ⚫
information office ⚫
information desk ⚫
enquiries ⚫
restaurant
refreshments ⚫
bar
delay ⚫
to be delayed ⚫
to cancel
'Has our flight been cancelled?

private transport (See also Specific Notions 5.3, 11.8 and 11.9.)
names of vehicles
e.g. bike/bicycle, car, lorry, motorcycle, scooter, van
to drive
driver
to ride
cyclist
to hire/to rent
We could 'always rent a 'car.
traffic
crossing
level crossing ⚫
roundabout ⚫
to cross
'Don't cross 'here!
corner
traffic lights
blue zone ●
In the 'blue zone you can park for 'one hour only.
speed
speed limit
fine ●
You'll have to pay a fine of '£10.
danger ●
dangerous
safe
safety ●
safety belt ●
signpost
to follow
'Follow the signs.
pedestrian ●
map
distance ●
to lose one's way
common road-sign texts (reading only)
e.g. cross now, exit, give way,
keep left, keep right, no parking,
no waiting, one way, stop, turn
left, turn right
5.4 holidays
journey
trip
tour
guided tour ●
tourist
tourist office
(tourist) guide
group
We 'went with a group of tourists.
to visit
sights ●

names of sights and buildings of interest
e.g. castle, cathedral, ruins, zoo
abroad ●
'Are you going abroad this year?
to a foreign country
'Are you going to a foreign country this year?

names of continents: Africa, America, Asia, Australia, Europe

5.5 accommodation

names of types of accommodation for travellers
e.g. camp site, guest house,
hotel, inn, tent, youth hostel

single room
double room
full board ●
half board ●
bed and breakfast
balcony
view ●
guest
to book
reservation ●
reception ●
derk ●
'Please leave your key at the desk.
to register ●
registration form ●
key
to call
'Can you call me at six, please?
message
'Is there a message for me?
hall
lounge ●
lift
to press ●
button
'Press the button | for the third floor.

to push ●
'Push | to 'open the door.

to pull ●
'Pull | to 'open the door.

fire
In case of fire | ...

to check out ●

bill
'Can I have my bill, please?

receipt
cheque
to pay cash
credit card

5.6 luggage

luggage/baggage

bag

suitcase

box
camera

porter ●
'Do you want a porter for your luggage?

5.7 entering and leaving a country

frontier/border

immigration ●
passport control ●

visa ●
customs
to import ●
to declare ●
'Have you anything to declare?

to open
'Will you open your bag, please?

duty ●
You'll have to pay duty on this.

duty-free ●
money
to change
I want to change 500 dollars.
currency ●

5.8 travel documents
document ●

passport

insurance
driving licence ●

6 Relations with other people

The learners can refer to personal relations, participate in social life, deal with matters of correspondence, refer to club membership, refer to forms of government and politics, to matters of crime and justice, of war and peace, to social affairs; exchange information and views on these subjects with others.

6.1 relationship

partner

acquaintance

stranger

friend

boy-friend

invitations

girl-friend
to invite

lover
to make an appointment
to join ●
'Will you ,join us for ,lunch?
to expect ●
We’ll ’expect you at ,six.
to visit
to come and see ... ●
'Why don’t you -come and ,see us to-night?
party
We’re ’having a ,party | to,night.
to talk
to dance
present
He ’brought a ‘present for me.
guest
6.3 correspondence
to correspond with ... ●
to write (to)
pen friend ●
letter
evelope
postcard
note paper
paper
'Have you ,got some ,paper for me?
stamp
airmail
pen
pencil
ball point/ball pen/biro
to send
I’ll ’send you a ,postcard.
to receive/to get
I ·got a ,letter from her.
answer
to answer
6.4 club membership
club
member
meeting
to meet
We ,meet every ,Wednesday.
6.5 government and politics
to govern
government
parliament
president
king
queen
prince
princess
minister
prime minister
to elect ●
election
to vote
politics
political
party
'Are you a -party ,member?
names of political parties
e.g. communist, conservative,
liberal, socialist
right wing
left wing
leader
He is the ‘leader of the con,servatives.
state
The ·state ·owns ‘many ,factories.
EU/European Union
NATO [neɪˈtɔː]
thief
burglar
burglary
theft

to rob
rober
robbery
to kill
to murder
killer/murderer
to kidnap
kidnapper
to hijack
hijacker
to rape
rape
to shoot
gun

bomb
to throw

The 'kidnapper threw a bomb into the garage.

terrorist
terrorism

drugs
to take drugs
addict
alcohol
victim

police
policeman
policewoman
police station
to arrest
law
lawyer
judge
jury
court

witness
prison
to punish
punishment

war and peace
peace
disarmament
war
to fight
army
navy
air force
soldier
officer
enemy
ally
battle
attack
to attack
defence
to defend
victory
defeat
(nuclear) weapon

gun
bullet
bomb
missile
spy

social affairs
issue
pollution
poverty
problem
question
welfare
rich
poor
7 Health and body care

The learners can refer to matters of personal comfort, stating whether they feel well, are hungry, tired, etc., refer to matters of personal hygiene and obtain the articles required, refer to matters of health and illness and describe what is wrong to a doctor or dentist, report accidents, refer to medical services and insurance; exchange information and views on these matters.

7.1 parts of the body

- **names of parts of the body**
  - e.g. arm, back, chest, foot, hair, hand, head, heart, leg, lungs, neck, stomach, tooth

7.2 personal comfort

- **comfortable**
  - I'm quite comfortable now.
  - The chair isn't very comfortable.

- **hunger**

- **hungry**

- **thirst**

- **thirsty**

- **tired**

- **to rest**
  - I'd like to rest a little.

- **sleepy**

- **to sleep**

- **to wake up**

- **to feel well**

- **to look well**

7.3 hygiene

- **clean**

- **dirty**

- **brush**

- **comb**

- **razor**

- **sanitary towel**

- **scissors**

- **soap**

- **toothbrush**

- **toothpaste**

- **towel**

- **to cut**
  - Will you cut my hair, please?

- **to shave**

- **to wash**
  - I'd like to wash before dinner.
  - Can you wash these clothes for me?

- **laundry**
  - Is there a laundry here?
  - Has the laundry come back yet?

7.4 ailments, accidents

- **health**

- **ill**

- **to fall ill**

- **to feel ill**

- **to be alive/to live**

- **dead**

- **killed**

- **disease**

- **illness**

- **pain/-ache**
  - I have a headache.

- **fever/temperature**

- **to have a cold**

- **dizzy**

- **to feel sick**

- **to hurt**

- **names of diseases**
  - e.g. AIDS, diabetes, diarrhoea, influenza (flu), V.D.
7 SPECIFIC NOTIONS

operation
I 'had an operation last year.
to be operated upon
accident
to fall
to break
He has 'broken his leg.
to burn
He has 'burnt his hand.
to cut
She has 'cut her finger.
wound
bandage/dressing
diet

7.5 medical services
dentist
doctor
nurse
specialist
chemist
medicine
'Do you take any medicine?

tablet
'Take three tablets a day.

pill

ambulance
hospital
ward
The patient is in the children's ward.
patient
The patient is waiting.
to fill
This tooth was filled six months ago.

appointment
'What time is your appointment?
to see a doctor (dentist, etc.)

prescription
glasses

insurance
to insure
insurance
third-party
'Do you have third-party insurance?

8 Education
The learners can exchange information and views on educational matters, particularly types of education, school subjects and qualifications.

8.1 schooling
education
to learn
to take a course, lessons, etc.
to teach
to train
He (was) 'trained to be a nurse.

lesson
course
I 'took a course in mathematics.

lecture

teacher

master

professor

student

pupil

names of types of education

e.g. primary school, secondary school, university, college, adult education
8.2 subjects

subject
'What subjects did you take at school?'

names of school subjects
e.g. arithmetic, computer science, economics, geography, history, mathematics, physics, reading, science, writing

certificate
examination
final examination
entrance examination
test
to pass
I passed my examination last year.
to fail
I failed my driving test twice.

8.3 qualifications
diploma

clothes, fashion
(See also General Notions 2.8.1 and 5.1.9.)
clothes
to try on
to put on (clothes)
to take off (clothes)
to wear (clothes)
tobacco

9 Shopping

The learners can use shopping facilities, particularly obtaining foodstuffs, clothes, household articles and smokers' requisites, discuss prices, pay for things bought; exchange information and views on these matters. For each of the following sub-themes, see also under General Notions, particularly 2.8.1, 5.1.1, 5.1.8-9, 5.1.14, 5.2.1-2.

9.1 shopping facilities
shop
to go shopping
supermarket
department store
to show
to wrap up
to change
to wear (clothes)

9.2 foodstuffs
See Specific Notions 10.1.

9.3 clothes
names of clothes
e.g. blouse, coat, dress, hat, jacket, raincoats, shirt, shoes, skirt, socks, stockings, suit, tights, trousers, underwear

clothes
handbag
jewellery
watch
'Have you got a new watch?'
to try on
to put on (clothes)
to take off (clothes)
tobacco
9.5 household articles
fork
knife
spoon
dish
plate

Be careful, the plate is hot.
cup
saucer
bottle
pot
glass

9.6 prices
(See also General Notions 5.2.1.)
to pay
to spend
money
discount
to discount
bank-notes
coins
credit card
£ (pound)
p (penny)

names of national currencies
e.g. cent, dollar, franc, mark

10 Food and drink
The learners can refer to and order various kinds of food and beverage,
also in a restaurant, café, etc.; exchange information and views on food,
drink and places for eating and drinking.

10.1 types of food and drink
(See also General Notions 5.1.6.)
to eat
meal
snack

names of meals
e.g. breakfast, lunch, tea, dinner,
supper
to have breakfast, etc.
course
‘What’s the main course?

vegetables

names of vegetables
e.g. beans, cabbage, carrots,
cauliflower, mushrooms, peas,
potatoes, spinach

chips

salad

soup

meat

names of kinds of meat
e.g. beef, lamb, mutton, pork,
veal

names of meat products
e.g. hamburger, sausage(s)

fish

names of kinds of fish
e.g. cod, plaice, sole

poultry

names of kinds of poultry
e.g. chicken, turkey

egg
omelette
cheese
dessert
sweet
'Would you like a sweet?

ice-cream
vanilla
chocolate
'Would you like a piece of chocolate?
'Chocolate ice-cream, please.

cake
pastry
pie
tart

fruit
names of fruits
e.g. apple, banana, grape, lemon, nut, orange, raisin, pear, strawberry

mustard
pepper
salt
oil
vinegar
flour
bread

piece
'Would you like a piece of cake?
slice
(bread) roll
sandwich
toast
butter
peanut butter
jam
to drink


tea
cream
milk
sugar
drink
'Would you like a drink?

names of beverages
e.g. beer, fruit juice, mineral water, soft drinks, orange juice, water, wine

ways of preparing food
e.g. to bake, to boil, to fry, to grill, to mix, to peel, to stir
fresh, freshly

10.2 eating and drinking out

snack bar
coffee shop
café

pub
bar
canteen
self-service
help-yourself

to serve
service
'No service in the garden.
'Service is included in the bill.

waiter
waitress
menu
to choose
to decide
'Have you decided yet?
to order

bill
tip
service charge

to take away
'Can I take this away?
11 Services

The learners can refer to, enquire about and make use of postal services, telephone, telegraph, bank, police, diplomatic services, medical services, car maintenance services and petrol stations.

11.1 post
(See also Specific Notions 6.3.)
post office
to post
postman ●
mail ●
parcel
postage ●
letter box
collection ●
poste-restante ●

to cash
I'd like to cash this cheque.

11.2 telephone
(See also Specific Notions 1.3.)
telephone booth ●
phone booth ●
call box ●
operator ●
to dial ●
out of order ●

to lose
I've lost my passport.

11.3 telegraph
telegraph ●
telegram
word
sender ●
fax

11.4 bank
(See also Specific Notions 9.6.)
bank
to change
I'd like to change 500 francs.
currency ●
cheque
travellers' cheque ●

to cash
I'd like to cash this cheque.

11.5 police
See Specific Notions 6.6.
to lose
I've lost my passport.

11.6 diplomatic services
consul
consulate
embassy
ambassador ●

11.7 hospital, surgery, etc.
See Specific Notions 7.5.

to help
to repair
to work
My brakes don't work.

11.8 garage
garage
trouble
engine trouble
brake
engine
lights
steering
to help
to repair
to work
My brakes don't work.

11.9 petrol station
(See also General Notions 2.8.5.)

petrol station
### 12 Places
The learners can ask the way and give strangers directions. See General Notions 2.1-2.5 and Specific Notions 1.2 and 5.3.

### 13 Language
The learners can refer to foreign-language ability and deal with problems of understanding and expression.

#### 13.1 ability, understanding, expression

- not at all
- to translate
- translation
- to interpret
- dictionary
- question
- ‘May I ask a question?’
- clear
- It’s not clear to me.
- to explain
- mistake
- names of languages
- e.g. French, German, English, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Russian

- I cannot write English very well.
- a little

### 14 Weather
The learners can understand a weather forecast and exchange information and views on climate and weather conditions.

#### 14.1 climate and weather

- sunshine
- to shine
- rain
- rainy
- to rain
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fog</th>
<th>gale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foggy</td>
<td>thunderstorm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mist ●</td>
<td>snowstorm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>lightning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to snow</td>
<td>fine ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice</td>
<td>It will be 'fine tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frost</td>
<td>mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to freeze</td>
<td>shade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>'Shall we sit in the shade?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exponents of single language functions may occur in isolation. 'Stop!' as an order, and 'Look out!' as a warning, are obvious examples. On the whole, however, function exponents are more likely to occur in sequences. Such sequences will usually exhibit certain regularities in the order of their elements. Thus, an apology will very often be followed by an explanation: 'I'm sorry I'm late, but I had to see my dentist first.' Such more or less regularly occurring combinations may be referred to as patterns. Monologues may be thus patterned, if only in that they may start with an utterance calling for attention and end with one signalling termination. With regard to oral communication involving contributions by the learner the emphasis, at Threshold Level, is not so much on monologues as on verbal exchanges between two, or more than two, speakers. In such exchanges the participants may mesh their contributions in accordance with certain conventions. We then speak of verbal exchange patterns. It is a characteristic of these patterns that they are variable, in that a conversation may move in various directions. Especially when they are very short, however, involving only two or three utterances, they may also be standardised. This may be said, for instance, of the typical greeting + response pattern occurring when two people pass each other in the street. The large majority of the verbal exchange patterns, however, that are relevant to Threshold Level learners in the light of the objective are variable. We may illustrate this by reproducing two examples of 'predictable fish-and-chip' discourses provided by A. J. Peck in an article called 'Some ideas on teaching discourse synthesis' (the function labels are ours):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sales person</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Sales person</th>
<th>Customer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;Yes?&quot;</td>
<td>'Haddock and, chips.&quot;</td>
<td>'That'll be '£1.20&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Thanks.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asking for wish (opening)</td>
<td>expressing wish</td>
<td>asking for payment</td>
<td>thanking (termination)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Cod, or plaice?&quot;</td>
<td>'Large, or, small&quot;</td>
<td>'Large.&quot;</td>
<td>'Salt and, vinegar.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asking for preference</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
<td>expressing further wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
<td>Customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Yes?&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Fish and, chips</td>
<td>- , twice.&quot;</td>
<td>'Plaice.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asking for wish (opening)</td>
<td>expressing wish</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Sales person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Cod, or plaice?&quot;</td>
<td>'Large, or, small&quot;</td>
<td>'Large.&quot;</td>
<td>'Salt and, vinegar.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asking for preference</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
<td>expressing preference</td>
<td>expressing further wish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Apart from the variability (by no means exhausted here) of the ‘fish-and-chips buying dialogue’, we note the occurrence of sub-patterns as well as the integration of non-verbal turns. Communicative ability at Threshold Level implies the ability to play a part in verbal exchange patterns such as the ones illustrated above.

A number of dialogue types (which may, in fact, involve more than two participants) are explicitly or implicitly covered by our objective. They involve the occurrence of verbal exchange patterns with a certain measure of predictability. They are particularly associated with the following communicative events.

1 making purchases
   a) in a shop
   b) at a ticket counter, ticket from bus conductor, etc.

2 ordering food and drink
   restaurant, canteen, snack bar, etc.

3 making enquiries
   a) non-personal (where to go, where to eat, about opening hours, about various facilities and services, etc.)
   b) personal (about name, address, place of origin, etc.)

4 meeting people
   a) strangers
   b) friends, acquaintances

5 asking and showing the way

6 asking and telling the time

7 inviting and reacting to invitation

8 arranging accommodation

9 proposing a course of action and reacting to such proposals

10 having a discussion
    agreeing/disagreeing, exchanging views, etc.

However predictable the occurrence of certain verbal exchange patterns in the above dialogue types may be, there is always a strong element of unpredictability as well. When the more or less standardised patterns are broken, or even set aside completely, conversation does not lend itself to a didactically meaningful
description of the kind we try to provide in this document. 'All we can be said to understand about such talk' Peck observes, 'is that certain elements occur frequently. These act as signposts along a road we are travelling.' He adds: 'We can teach pupils to recognise these elements of discourse and to use them themselves.'

Chapter 5 contains a classified list of the language functions, together with their common exponents, which are combined in verbal interaction. We have not thought it necessary, or even desirable, to attempt to specify the verbal interaction patterns to be used by learners (e.g. in the form of praxeograms).

As we have shown, not even the most routine transactions of daily life are fully predictable. Many conditions may have to be fulfilled before a transaction can be successfully completed. A complex transaction may have to pass through numerous stages of negotiation each involving lengthy verbal exchanges. In routine cases many may be passed over in silence and the exchange limited to a few words on either side. Making travel arrangements, say, may take either form. We all know what it is like to queue behind someone who wishes to travel to a remote place involving different means of transport, choices of route, co-ordination of timetable, comparison of prices using different combinations of various categories of tickets, involving different currencies, wishing to use a foreign credit card, etc., when all one wishes to do oneself is to buy a single ticket to the next station, and the train is due to leave in five minutes. One wishes there were simply a ticket vending machine, in which case no oral interaction need – or indeed can – take place, but instead a set of written instructions must be followed. The example could be paralleled in the settings of shopping, eating out, garages, and others where goods and services are required. In each case the services and/or goods must be identified, made available and paid for. Each stage may be carried out through personal interaction involving more or less verbal interaction or by self-service with or without mechanisation, normally eliminating verbal interaction in favour of written instructions. What is to be done at each stage may be self-evident, requiring no language, or a perfunctory exchange, or a brief unrelated interactional exchange to establish human contact. On the other hand, there may be choices to be exercised, preferences to be expressed, pros and cons to be discussed, conflicts of interest to be resolved, before the decisions can be made on which the next stage depends. At any time, communication difficulties may arise, needing to be dealt with by repair procedures. As social beings we have the larger schemata in our social competence, though it is only in exceptional circumstances that we need to follow the full process through in detail by means of language. In any case:
• the schemata are largely shared by European societies. Where
transactions and interactions are governed by different rules,
effective communication and co-operation depend, of course, on
mutual understanding between participants from different
backgrounds (e.g. whether and how bargaining is conducted over
prices, whether tipping is expected for small services, etc.);
• the order in which the steps occur is not fixed;
• whether steps are made explicit or passed over in silence depends on
the situation and on cultural conventions;
• the ways in which objects are identified, preferences expressed,
dissatisfaction or agreement shown and so on are not specific to
particular situations (beyond the topic-specific words and
expressions required). They are generalisable as resources which can
be called on according to need in a wide range of situations. It is this
principle which underlies the notional/functional approach as
distinct from some other situational approaches.

For these reasons, we do not specify here in an exhaustive way the
patterns of verbal interaction which a learner should be able to carry
through in the situations envisaged. To attempt to do so would be at
once too restrictive and over elaborate. In some cases (e.g. having a
discussion) the possibilities of combining speech acts are virtually
unlimited. In others (e.g. asking and telling the time) a two-term exchange
normally suffices, apart from non-specific opening and closing
exchanges. A general schema, such as that presented below, may
however be set up to cover, with certain adaptations, the various
transactions involving the purchase of goods and services.

General schema for purchase of goods or services

1 Moving to place of transaction
   1.1 Finding the way to the shop, store, supermarket, restaurant,
       station, hotel, etc.
   1.2 Finding the way to the counter, department, table, ticket office,
       reception, etc.

2 Establishing contact
   2.1 Exchanging greetings with the shopkeeper/assistant/waiter/
       receptionist, etc.
       2.1.1 assistant greets
       2.1.2 customer greets
3 Selecting goods/services
   3.1 identifying category of goods/services required
      3.1.1 seeking information
      3.1.2 giving information
   3.2 identifying options
   3.3 discussing pros and cons of options (e.g. quality, price, colour, size of goods)
      3.3.1 seeking information
      3.3.2 giving information
      3.3.3 seeking advice
      3.3.4 giving advice
      3.3.5 asking for preference
      3.3.6 expressing preference etc.
   3.4 identifying particular goods required
   3.5 examining goods
   3.6 agreeing to purchase
4 Exchanging goods for payment
   4.1 agreeing prices of items
   4.2 agreeing addition of total
   4.3 receiving/handling over payment
   4.4 receiving/handling over goods (and receipt)
   4.5 exchanging thanks
      4.5.1 assistant thanks
      4.5.2 customer thanks
5 Leave taking
   5.1 expressing (mutual) satisfaction
      5.1.1 assistant expresses satisfaction
      5.1.2 customer expresses satisfaction
   5.2 exchanging interpersonal comment (e.g. weather, local gossip)
   5.3 exchanging parting greetings
      5.3.1 assistant greets
      5.3.2 customer greets
It will be seen that the sequence is not strictly linear. In hotels and restaurants 4.5 may come between 3.4 and 3.5, payment being made normally at the end of the meal or period of residence. In a village shop elements of 5.2 may be interspersed with any of the other stages. In the case of supermarkets and especially mechanised vending machines 2 and 5 do not apply. 3.1–3.6 and 4.5–4.6 are carried out in silence by the customer in 'dialogue' with written descriptions and instructions – a process often preferred by foreign visitors and even native speakers as avoidance strategies against expected difficulties of interpersonal communication.

It will also be seen that (4) is central. A minimal interaction consists of 4.4 and 4.5, performed by actions without words.

Peck 1: 3.1.1–3.4–4.1–(4.3)–4.5.1
Peck 2: 3.1.1–3.1.2–3.2–3.4–3.2–3.4–3.4–4.1–(4.3)–(4.4)

Peck's examples are brief and businesslike, in a situation where choice is extremely restricted and prices are fixed. Other situations (e.g. a celebratory meal in an expensive restaurant, buying an expensive dress in a prestigious store) would call on more of the resources implied, as might the selection of hotel accommodation or the kind of complex travel arrangements outlined earlier.
9 Dealing with texts: reading and listening

In item 3 of the extended characterisation the ability to deal with written and spoken texts that is expected of learners at Threshold Level is related and confined to texts relevant to certain specified situations and to certain specified topics. What the learners can do with regard to these texts - the 'tasks' they can perform - is described in the same item as 'understanding the gist and/or relevant details'. In carrying out these tasks the learners may have to use certain interpretation strategies as listed under item 5 of the extended characterisation:

- distinguishing main points and secondary points
- distinguishing fact from comment
- identifying relevant information
- making use of clues such as titles, illustrations, typography (e.g. bolding, italics, capitals), paragraphing, and, in oral texts, discourse markers such as phrasing, the placing of emphasis, structurally relevant pauses, tone of voice, etc.

The nature of the texts to be understood is further defined by the following criteria:

- they have a clear structure, both conceptually and formally
- the information contained in them is exclusively or mainly offered explicitly
- their understanding presupposes little or no familiarity with specific features of a foreign culture, other than 'general European culture'
- they are produced in an easily accessible form.

No limitation is put on the kind of information to be understood from a text as defined above. This means that the understanding is not confined to factual information but may equally concern the expression of opinions, attitudes, moods and wishes, provided that particularly the second criterion above is satisfied.

No indications are given as to the range and nature of the lexical content of texts to be understood. When a learner can use the strategies listed as I.1–5 and II.1–4 in the chapter on 'compensation strategies' (Chapter 12), there is no point in trying to specify the limits of the vocabulary content that the learners may be supposed to be able to deal with. This is all the more valid for reading, if the learners have access to a dictionary and know how to use it. It is assumed that with these
devices and the command of a core vocabulary such as the one recommended in this volume the learners’ range of action – particularly as readers – is, as far as vocabulary is concerned, sufficient for the kinds of texts that fall within the terms of our definition. Only one further, and obvious, reservation has to be made with regard to vocabulary, and that is that the learners cannot be expected to be able to understand items whose meaning, in the available context, would be obscure to them even if the text had been produced in their native language. This would apply to items whose meaning would be, conceptually, beyond the learners’ mental reach. They would be unlikely to occur, however, in texts referred to in this specification.

Although an exhaustive enumeration of text types that the learner at Threshold Level will be able to deal with is not possible, we shall list, by way of guidance and exemplification, those text types that at this level would seem to be particularly relevant in connection with the situations and the topics mentioned in items 1 and 2 of the extended characterisation. By ‘relevant’ we mean ‘relevant to the learners’ needs and interests’, and the implication of ‘at this level’ is that we exclude those text types which would be likely to make a much greater demand on the learners’ familiarity with the foreign language than may be expected at Threshold Level. The latter restriction leads to the exclusion of, for instance, the text type ‘rules and regulations’, which often requires familiarity with a highly formal register.

Reading

Text types related to the situations of the extended characterisation:

Signs (e.g. street signs), directions (e.g. how to make a phone call), notices, instructions (e.g. warnings), posters, advertisements, brochures, leaflets, guides (e.g. hotel guides, city guides), price lists, timetables, bills, tickets, radio/TV/theatre programmes, legends (of maps), telephone directories, forms (e.g. landing forms, hotel registration forms), shop signs, product packaging (e.g. in supermarkets), instructions on automatic vending machines.

Text types related to the topics of the extended characterisation:

In addition to several text types listed under ‘situations’ above, the following:

personal correspondence (letters, postcards, telegrams); informative articles, features, weather forecasts, from newspapers and magazines.
Listening

The range of text types proposed for listening is considerably narrower than that for reading. Generally, the understanding of orally produced texts is subject to time constraints: they are produced only once and in a linear form which does not allow the listener to go back to earlier parts or to reflect on the text as a whole as easily as may be done with written texts. It would, therefore, be unrealistic to expect a listening ability fully corresponding to what was included under 'reading'. Such texts as news programmes on radio and especially on television with its stronger visual support may be partly understood by learners at Threshold Level but because of their low degree of predictability we would situate a general ability to understand their gist and/or relevant details at a somewhat higher level. However, learners at Threshold Level should be capable of understanding the gist and many relevant details of programmes (e.g. BBC World Service broadcasts) specifically directed to non-native audiences with correspondingly appropriate vocabulary, grammar and pronunciation.

Text types for listening:

Announcements/information through public address systems at bus stations, railway stations, airports, in flight, in discos, stadiums, at pop concerts, etc.; telephone information (e.g. automatic answering devices: weather, traffic conditions, medical services, timetables, etc.); weather forecasts (radio and TV); traffic information (radio); tourist information (e.g. through portable museum guides); publicity texts (radio, TV, supermarket, etc.); routine commands (instructions/directions by police, customs officials, airline personnel, etc.).

Notes

1 All texts should satisfy the final criterion of item 3 of the extended characterisation (see Chapter 3).

2 It is in accordance with the nature of the present specification as a general objective that we refrain from including such items as reviews from newspapers and magazines, short stories, poems, comic strips, flow-charts, etc., although it is likely that a learner who has at his disposal the linguistic content of Threshold Level would be able to understand much reading material of this kind. In order to meet the needs and interests of particular sub-groups of the target population such items may, of course, be included in specific learning programmes as well as in adaptations of the objective for individual sub-groups.
3 The present specification is the specification of an objective, not of the content of a learning programme. This is why, apart from those listed in the first paragraph of this chapter, no mention is made in this chapter of further techniques that may be usefully employed towards achieving understanding of a text. These techniques, which include segmentation, the establishment of links between segments, underlining, note-taking and note-making, etc., may be profitably practised in a learning programme designed to enable learners to do what is specified in our objective, but they are not presented as components of the objective itself because the extent to which each individual learner makes use of them in satisfying the requirements of the objective is subject to personal variation. In the same way, such strategies as inferencing, hypothesising from proper names, international words, cognate words in the learner's mother tongue or in other languages he or she may have learnt, are all too variable to be specified in a general performance objective. However, an awareness of such techniques and strategies, and experience in their use, form an important aspect of learning to learn (cf. Chapter 13).
10 Writing

The objective for writing at Threshold Level is very limited. It is assumed that for this skill the actual needs of the majority of the members of the target group who are expected to be temporary visitors do not go beyond the ability to fill in certain forms, to write a few types of standard letter, and to write simple personal letters on subjects of common interest to themselves and friends or acquaintances. All this falls strictly within items 1 and 2 of the extended characterisation. It may be specified as follows:

The learners will be able to complete forms:
- hotel registration forms
- forms required when entering or leaving a foreign country

The learners will be able to write standard letters:
- enquiring about price and conditions of accommodation
- stating wishes as to size of rooms, arrangement (full board, etc.), amenities, view
- enquiring about tourist attractions, sights, etc.
- booking accommodation

The learners will be able to conduct personal correspondence:
- simple messages such as greetings and congratulations
- simple private letters concerning matters of common interest to themselves and friends or acquaintances.

The writing requirements of temporary residents, as set out in the extended characterisation, are of a somewhat different character. These learners will almost certainly be called upon to complete a wider range of official forms. They may need to write letters enquiring about accommodation to rent, and if need be, letters of complaint to landlords. They may send written invitations and write brief letters of thanks for hospitality received. They may have to note down and relay messages (e.g. by telephone). They may have to write letters of application for jobs, to report briefly on accidents and complete insurance claims. As parents, they may need to write notes to school explaining a child’s absence. In carrying out the above tasks, the learner should be able to observe conventions regarding:
- basic letter layout
- opening and closing formulae (See Language Functions 5.27-28)
- representation of dates (See General Notions 3.3)
• use of capitals and punctuation (, ; : . ! ?)

These tasks can be accomplished within the limits of the resources required for the tasks specified at Threshold Level, using the techniques set out in Chapters 12 and 13.
Items 4 and 6 of the extended characterisation are concerned with 'sociocultural competence', the aspect of communicative ability which involves those specific features of a society and its culture which are manifest in the communicative behaviour of the members of this society. These features may be classified as 'social conventions' (4a), 'social rituals' (4b) and 'universal experiences' (6). The degree of familiarity with them which is required for successful communication depends on the circumstances in which the communication takes place. It will probably be higher in contacts with native speakers of the foreign language (especially when the learner is a temporary resident rather than a visitor) than when the foreign language is used as lingua franca. The Threshold Level is designed to suit all these types of contacts. This means, on the one hand, that in attempting to indicate what may be expected of a learner at this level we have to focus on the more predictable type of contact, that with native speakers of the foreign language and particularly with such native speakers in their own country. On the other hand it means that an alertness has to be stimulated in the learners to unexpected sociocultural differences between their communication partners and themselves. This applies particularly when English is in use as a medium of international communication between non-native speakers from different cultures. Learners cannot take it for granted that their interlocutor will share either their own values, attitudes, beliefs and social conventions or those of Anglo-Saxon peoples. They will need to be alert to signs of cultural differences, to be tolerant of such differences and be prepared to operate whatever strategies may be needed to establish a proper basis for communication by raising cultural differences into consciousness.

A first approach to a specification of sociocultural competence for Threshold Level is to be found in items 4 and 6 of the extended characterisation. The formulations chosen there are deliberately open-ended and exemplificatory. This will be the same in the present specification so that it may suit the needs and interests of our highly heterogeneous target population, further concretisations to be undertaken for each sub-group individually. The selection we present below has been made with the utmost economy, taking into account the overall height of the Threshold Level.

Parts of the specification of sociocultural competence will correspond to most other components of the Threshold Level in that they will describe what the learners can do in the foreign language. Other parts, however, will be formulated in terms of the learners' 'awareness of' or 'familiarity with' certain aspects of the foreign culture. An attempt to formulate these parts as well in terms of the learners' behaviour
potential would involve choices of such an arbitrary nature that their validity would be unacceptably low. What the specifications in terms of awareness and familiarity are meant to ensure is that at Threshold Level the learners will have had certain experiences, that they have been confronted with certain features of the foreign culture and that they have been led to pay attention to them and to try and relate them to their own previous experiences.

In other words, these elements of the Threshold Level objective are concerned with learning experiences that the learner is supposed to have had. What the learners do with these experiences and how they affect their own attitudes and behaviour is deliberately left open. This is done to provide the fullest possible scope for the accommodation of the large variety of emphases that will be required for different courses, for different types of learners, and even for individual learners.

Sociocultural competence for English at Threshold Level

1 Universal experiences

1 everyday life
The learners have some familiarity with:

- at what times people have their regular meals and in what ways the composition of meals, including beverages, typically differs from that in their own country;
- major national holidays;
- working hours;
- preferred leisure activities (to the extent that generalisation is possible).

2 living conditions
The learners have some familiarity with:

- living standards, including significant differences between major parts of a country;
- ethnic composition of the population.
3 interpersonal relations
The learners have some familiarity with:
- class structure of society and relations between the classes;
- relations within the family;
- formality/informality in work situations and in contacts with officials;
- interracial relations;
- major political groups.

4 major values and attitudes
The learners have some familiarity with the value generally attached to and the prevalent attitude towards:
- social class;
- wealth and security;
- tradition;
- national identity and foreigners;
- politics;
- religion.

II Social conventions and rituals

1 non-linguistic
a) body language
The learner is aware of the diversity of conventions in different countries with regard to hand shaking, touching, embracing, kissing, gesticulation, close physical proximity and protracted direct eye contact, and is aware of the embarrassment that may be caused by non-observance of the conventions followed by the interlocutor.

b) visiting rituals
The learners know – or can enquire:
- whether they are expected to be punctual;
- whether they are expected to bring a present, and if so what sort of present;
- what sort of clothes to wear;
c eating and drinking rituals

The learners are aware that rituals may differ from what is customary in their own country, and are ready to observe, and if appropriate, follow others’ examples.

2 linguistic

The learner is aware of the sociocultural conventions governing the use of the language functions listed in Chapter 5 of this document, and can perform them appropriately. He/she is aware of the conventions of politeness described below and is able to act appropriately in this respect.

In addition to what is specified above, the Threshold Level contains a further, implicit, component of sociocultural competence, which is most easily identifiable in the recommended word list. Several items in this list have a meaning which is more or less subtly different from that of their translation equivalents in other languages. For English tea is an obvious example, but also such items as church, soldier, town, vegetables may not fully correspond in meaning to comparable words in other languages. At Threshold Level the learner cannot be expected to be aware of all these differences, except to the extent that awareness of them is essential to successful communication within the contexts listed under items 1 and 2 of the extended characterisation.

Politeness conventions

The exponents recommended for use at Threshold Level, even more so for Waystage, are generally of a simple and direct nature. As such, they will be readily understood by other language users. However, they are sometimes open to misinterpretation as showing insufficient regard for the feelings of the partner and thus lacking in politeness. One way to avoid this impression is by smiling, making eye contact and generally signalling goodwill through body language. Learners should, however, also be aware of the main features of politeness in speech so as to recognise them in the speech of others and respond appropriately, and also to follow the same principles in their own speech as they feel to be appropriate to the situation and their relation to the partner. In
some cases, the use of a politeness marker is so usual that we have included it directly in the suggested exponent. However, to have attempted to do so in all cases would have both overloaded the specification and been in fact too directive and even misleading. We have preferred to state the principles and to leave it to learners, under guidance from their teachers, to apply them appropriately.

The basic principle of politeness is to show respect for the partner. In particular, the speaker tries to avoid embarrassment, distress or displeasure by showing an awareness of the demands made upon the partner by what he/she says. In this way the possibility of overt conflict is avoided or reduced. The principle can be embodied in a number of maxims:

1 **Do not be dogmatic.** Remember that the partner may have a different opinion.
   
   This maxim applies to the functions of imparting factual information and expressing attitudes. It implies qualifying simple declarative sentences in the following ways:
   
a) the use of *I think*, *I believe*, *I expect*, as introducers or as tags. If they are unstressed, their use does not indicate uncertainty or lack of confidence;
   
   *I think his mother is Italian.*
   
   *She comes from Calabria, I believe.*
   
b) the use of *you know*, *of course*, to imply that the partner is not ignorant;
   
   *Of course, his mother is Italian, you know.*
   
c) the use of tag questions to invite the partner's agreement (falling intonation) or confirmation (rising intonation).
   
   *His mother is Italian, isn't she?* (inviting agreement; no uncertainty);
   
   *His mother is Italian, isn't she?* (asking confirmation; uncertain).

Correcting is liable to give offence, since it involves telling the partner that he/she has made a mistake. Offence can be avoided by:

- apologising for correcting;
  
  *I'm sorry, but the lecture isn't on Wednesday. It's on Friday.*

- querying what has been said, so that the partner can correct the slip;
  
  *Blue? Did you say her dress was blue?*

- presenting the correction as a different opinion;
  
  *Fifty-four? I thought eight sevens were fifty-six.*

- requesting confirmation by the use of a question tag.
  
  *Nicaragua? San Jose is in Costa Rica, isn't it?*

2 **Be reluctant to say what may distress or displease the partner.** This applies to such functions as breaking bad news, expressing disagreement,
declining offers and invitations, saying that the partner is obliged to do something, prohibiting and withholding permission, expressing displeasure, dislike, dissatisfaction, disappointment and disapproval. The maxim implies such strategies as:

a) expressing reluctance;
   I 'don't ·want to com"plain | but, ...
   I 'don't ·want to be "difficult | but ...
   I 'don't ·like "saying so, | but ...
   (e.g. this ·soup is 'cold).
   (e.g. this ma·chine doesn't 'work).
   (e.g. the ·music is 'too ,loud).

b) seeking the partner's agreement;
   I 'hope you ·don't ·mind me vsaying
   so, | but ...
   'Don't you a·gree | that ...
   (e.g. 'those 'colours ·don't ,mix).
   (e.g. 'that ·colour is ·rather too ,bright).

c) apologising or expressing regret;
   I'm ·sorry, | but ...
   I'm a·fraid ...
   (e.g. your 'work is ·not ,good e·nough).
   (e.g. you 'haven't ·passed your e,xam).

   This is especially frequent in prohibitions and withholding permission.
   I'm ·sorry, | but you 'can't ·leave to'morrow.
   I'm a·fraid you 'can't ·smoke in 'here.

d) using euphemisms;
   e.g. Your ·work 'isn't ·very ·good ...
   I 'can't ·say I ·like it ...
   (= your work is bad).
   (= I dislike it).

e) implying something unpleasant rather than stating it openly.
   e.g. I'd ·like to ·help you ...
   Your i·deas are ·interesting ...
   (implying but I can't).
   (implying but I don't agree with them).

   Note the frequent use of falling-rising intonations.

Expressing disagreement is likely to cause offence and to lead to conflict. The risk can be reduced by:

   • apologising for not agreeing;
     e.g. I'm ·sorry, | but I 'don't a.gree.

   • expressing regret for not agreeing.
     e.g. I'm a·fraid that ·isn't ,true.

3 Do not force the partner to act. Allow him/her to appear to act voluntarily. This maxim applies to the functions of suasion, seeking factual information and finding out attitudes. It implies:
a) adding please when you call for action by the partner;
   i) 'Where is the toilet, please?' (asking for information);
   ii) A return ticket to London, please. (requesting something);
   iii) 'Sit down, please.' (giving instructions, orders).

b) avoiding simple imperatives when asking the partner to do something for you. Instead,
   i) ask if he/she is willing to act,
      e.g. 'Will you open the window, please?
   is able to act,
      e.g. 'Can you open this tin for me, please?
   wishes to act.
      e.g. 'Would you like to help me, please?

   ii) use introducers such as
      I wonder if ...
      e.g. I wonder if you could close the window, please?
      Do you think ...
      e.g. 'Do you think you could open this tin for me, please?

   iii) use warnings or advice
      e.g. 'Don't forget to post the letter.
            If I were you, I'd keep your eyes on the road.

   iv) draw attention to the situation, inviting the partner to recognise that there is a problem that needs to be dealt with.
      e.g. It's cold in here, isn't it? (= please close the window).
            I can't open this tin.
            Dinner's ready. (= please open it for me).
      (= come and sit down to eat it).

Asking is a form of suasion, since the partner is asked to do something for you, namely provide information. Wh questions are normally accompanied by please'. After the partner has replied it is normal to thank him/her for doing so.

'What's the time, please?
'Twelve o'clock.
Thank you.

Offers and invitations are very much subject to politeness conventions, but in a complex way, since they attempt to persuade the partner to act in a certain way, but in the interests of the partner rather than of the speaker. Invitations and offers may be strong or weak.

A 'strong' offer or invitation, making it easier for the partner to accept, may be conveyed:
• by using an imperative as though it were an order;
   e.g. 'Let me help you.
         Give me that case to carry.
         Come and spend the day in Oxford.'
• by expressing obligation or necessity;
  e.g. You 'must let -me -carry that -case.

• by demanding a promise;
  e.g. 'Promise you will -come to ,dinner with us.

• by demanding confirmation of an imputed intention.
  e.g. You ,will be our ,guests, | ,won't you?

Note the use of low falling intonations with strong offers and invitations.

A 'weak' offer or invitation makes it possible for the partner to decline:

• by using an interrogative question regarding the partner's intentions, desires, needs or ability.
  e.g. 'Are you ·coming to ,dinner?
       'Would you ·like some, help with that ·problem?
       'Do you ·need any ,help?
       'Can you ·come to ·dinner next ,Wednesday?

Especially weak are offers that:

a) require the partner to admit that he/she is unable to refuse;
  e.g. 'Can you ,manage?
       'Are you ,stuck?

b) are negatively phrased.
  e.g. I 'don't sup·pose you could ·do with some ·help?
       'You 'don't re·quire as,sistance, | ,do you?

Note the prevalence of rising intonation with weak offers. Strong offers can be accepted without demur, or confirmation can be invited:

  e.g. 'Are you ,sure?
       'Is ·that ·all ,right?

A weak offer or invitation is not usually accepted without demur. More commonly, a repeated offer is invited:

  e.g. 'Won't that be ·too much ,trouble?
       'Can you ·spare the ,time?
       It's very ·heavy, | ·that ,case.

or a weak rejection is offered:

  e.g. 'No, ,thank you, | I 'don't want to ·bother you.
       I'm ·sure you're ·much ·too ·busy.

This allows the partner to withdraw the offer or invitation:

  e.g. 'Well, | as a ·matter of ·fact, | I 'am ·rather ,busy.
       ·Right ·then. | So 'long as you can ,manage.
or to repeat it, usually in a stronger form:

e.g. 'No, I really. I'd like to help.
      'No, I do come. We'd very much like you to come.

The declining of a strong invitation is usually accompanied by an apology, or a reason for declining an offer:

e.g. Well, thank you, but I'm afraid I have another engagement.
      'No, thank you, I don't smoke.
      Thanks, but it's easier by myself.

A suggestion for further contact, or even an invitation to visit, may be a polite or a well-intentioned way of ending a contact. Its formal acceptance need not entail a firm commitment on either side:

  e.g. A: 'Do visit us next time you're in London.
       B: 'Thank you, I will.

Apologies are often called for in social life, for reasons ranging from the trivial and conventional to serious damage or inconvenience. For brushing against someone in passing a perfunctory apology is sufficient:

e.g. 'Sorry.

On the other hand, if damage or inconvenience are caused, as when you keep someone waiting for an appreciable time, the apology normally involves an explanation:

e.g. I'm very sorry to be so late. I'm afraid I missed the train.

The politeness conventions described above are widely used and understood in English-speaking countries, especially between speakers in the roles characteristic of Threshold Level. A learner at Threshold Level should be able to recognise their use and to identify the attitudes and intentions of speakers who use them. Their appropriate use is, however, governed by such factors as:

- the social and regional groups to which the speaker belongs. There are differences in usage between men and women, working and middle class, the North and South of Britain, etc.;
- the speaker's personality: some people are more direct, others more sensitive to the feelings of other people;
- the relations of the conversational partners: close friends need make less use of politeness conventions than acquaintances or strangers;
- the nature of the situation: urgent emergencies demand immediate decisive action. Where conflicts of interest arise and polite methods fail, a learner may well need to be frank, even blunt in speaking his/her mind.
12 Compensation strategies

No matter how hard we try to assess and to predict learners’ communication needs, to determine the situations requiring foreign language use which they are most likely to find themselves in, and to identify those language forms which are most likely to enable them to cope with these situations, there will always be a very broad margin of unpredictability. And even if the demands of a particular communication situation do not exceed that which the learners have been thoroughly prepared for, there are likely to be failures of recall, failures to activate, on the spur of the moment, certain items of knowledge or elements of skill that were acquired during the learning process.

This means that even if we confine ourselves to the requirements of everyday situations, unpredictable to a certain extent, the learner has to be prepared to cope with unpredicted demands as well as with failures of recall.

To some people skill in coping comes naturally. Somehow they manage, whatever their lack of skill or knowledge with regard to the ‘proper’ form of communication. Most people, however, will benefit substantially by being given ample opportunity, in the course of their learning process, to develop their skill in this respect. It is not primarily a matter of being ‘taught’ how to cope, but of being led to develop one’s own strategies for doing so. Although certain strategies and techniques may almost certainly be beneficial to everyone, individual differences corresponding to differences in personality are to be given full scope.

What may be expected of learners at Threshold Level, then, is some skill in dealing with the demands of a communication situation that they are not fully prepared for. This means particularly that:

as a reader or listener the learner is not ‘thrown’ by the occurrence of unknown linguistic elements in a text;

as a speaker or writer the learner is prepared to seek solutions to problems caused by insufficient linguistic skill or knowledge;

as a social agent the learner is not put out by uncertainty as to the accepted code of behaviour.

There is no direct relationship between these attitudinal aspects and specific abilities. Different learners are likely to develop different sets of strategies for coping with the problems involved. Consequently, no standard operationalisation is to be sought. Yet, among the various techniques and strategies that are available a certain number may be identified as particularly likely to suit each individual learner and to contribute substantially to the development of the desired attitudes.
Like other aspects of communicative ability at Threshold Level, this may be described and listed in terms of what the learner can do, and supplemented with recommended exponents where this is appropriate. Because some items will require the fulfilling of particular language functions and the handling of particular notions, a partial overlap with other lists in the present objective is inevitable. A similar overlap will occur between the present list and that of the chapter on ‘dealing with texts’ (Chapter 9).

I  As a reader, the learner can:

1  deduce the meanings of complex words composed of elements (base(s) and affixes) which are familiar to the learner and which are combined in accordance with productive rules of word formation, insofar as these meanings are directly derivable on the basis of familiarity with the elements involved and with generally applied rules of word formation;

2  deduce the meanings of unfamiliar elements (particularly phrases and words) from a context of familiar elements which allows these meanings to be identified;

3  correctly interpret the meanings of so-called ‘international words’ that are familiar from the learner’s native language and whose formal relation to the native language equivalent is fully transparent; he/she is aware of the existence of ‘false friends’ and will remain on the alert for differences in the meanings of ‘international’ words and cognate words from one language to another;

4  find the meanings of unknown words or phrases in a bilingual dictionary or alphabetically arranged word list as well as in a monolingual dictionary, provided that the defining vocabulary contains mostly familiar elements;

5  with or without the aid of the above devices derive specific information from a text containing unknown elements, provided that, in addition to what is specified elsewhere in the present objective, this does not require further abilities than those listed above, the acceptable degree of difficulty of the text depending on the availability or non-availability of a dictionary or word list.

II  As a listener, the learner can:

1  carry out the operation described in I.1, provided that the word-formation process involved does not entail further phonological changes in the constituent elements than linking, stress adjustment, and consequent (regular) vowel and consonant changes;
2 carry out the operation described in 1.2, provided that the contextual clues are presented in such a way that they are recognisable as such and interpretable in linear sequence without necessitating backtracking and reconsideration of the context;

3 carry out the operation described in 1.3, provided that phonological differences between the foreign language form and the native language form are confined to standard correspondences between the two languages;

4 derive specific information from a text containing unknown elements, provided that, in addition to what is specified elsewhere in the present objective, this does not require further abilities than those listed in II.1, II.2 and II.3;

5 in face-to-face contacts appeal to a communication partner's assistance, particularly by using the devices listed in section 6 of Language Functions.

III As a speaker, the learner can:

1 introduce a rephrasing
   ("Sorry,) I'll 'start a,gain.
   ("Sorry,) I'll 'try to ·say that a,gain.

2 describe by means of paraphrase, particularly by using a general word (person, thing, etc.) or a superordinate, together with a qualification indicating:
   • general physical properties such as colour, size, shape (See General Notions.)
   • specific features (an X with three legs)
   • use (an X to cut bread)

3 describe by referring to qualities and properties:
   • general physical properties (See General Notions.)
     It is ...
   • specific features
     It has ...
   • use
     You can ... with it.

4 identify by indicating
   one ·like ,that.
   I'd ·like ,this, ·please.

5 appeal for assistance
   'What do you ·call ·that (a,gain)?
   I 'don't ·know the ·English/·German, etc. ·word.
   In [native language] we say ...

**IV As a writer, the learner can:**

1. express ignorance
   - I 'don't ·know ·how to ,say it.
   - I 'don't ·know ·what you ,call it.

2. use the devices mentioned under III.2 and III.3;

3. use dictionaries, both bilingual and monolingual of an appropriate kind.

**V As a social agent, the learner can:**

1. apologise for uncertainty or ignorance as to the accepted code of behaviour
   - I'm ‗sorry ‗I 'don't/ didn't ‗know ...

2. refer to what is customary in his/her own country
   - In ‗my ‗country we ...

3. ask for guidance
   - ‗How is this  done in  your  country?
   - ‗How should I  do this?
   - ‗What should I  do?
   - At ‗what  time should I  come?
   - etc.

The above strategies and techniques are those that every learner at **Threshold Level** may be expected to be able to use together with the use of the language functions listed in section 6 of Chapter 5. In addition, each individual learner is likely to have other privileged devices at his or her disposal. They may, but will not necessarily, include such techniques as finding information in grammatical surveys, in general reference works, etc., and such strategies as using a synonym for an unknown word, allowing oneself to use grammatically imperfect forms, experimenting with word formation, foreignising a native-language form, etc. Which of these devices the learners are given opportunities to adopt cannot be laid down in a general objective but is to be left to those providing learning facilities.
13 Learning to learn

The Threshold Level is an objective derived from the estimated needs of the learners or communicators. A course – that is the sum total of the learning experiences offered to the learners – designed for Threshold Level will have to enable the learners to satisfy these needs. Yet, it will inevitably do other things as well. Depending on its design and presentation it may give the learners pleasure or hardship, it may promote, maintain, or reduce their motivation for learning, it may bolster or diminish their self-confidence, it may stimulate their interest and sensitivity to the world around them or it may cause them to withdraw into themselves; in short, it may benefit the learners far beyond the basic objectives of the course or it may limit itself to these and, possibly, it may even harm the learners as persons. All these effects – positive or negative – are independent of the learning load that is represented by the content of an objective, they are produced by the impact upon particular learners of the forms and the manners of the presentation and the practice of this content. At the same time they may affect the learners’ impression of the learning load in making this load appear to be more demanding or less so.

The experience, then, of learning for Threshold Level will affect the learners in various ways beyond the acquisition of a certain learning content. One of the ways in which it may substantially benefit the learners is in stimulating their awareness of the learning process itself and increasing their learning potential. This ‘learning to learn’ does not, at first sight, appear to fall within our communicative objective. It may, however, easily be integrated into this objective. And there are at least two good reasons for trying to do so. In the first place, it has now long been accepted by learning psychologists that insightful learning is likely to be more effective – and to produce more lasting effects – than learning without insight. This greater effectiveness is partly due to the motivating power of knowing what one is doing and why one is doing it. Secondly, ‘learning to learn’ is an invaluable aspect of preparing the learners for whatever further learning may be required by them. Like any general objective, the Threshold Level is no more than an assessment of what the average member of a particular target group is most likely to need at a given stage in his or her development. The actual needs of individual members of the target group are certain to differ to a greater or a lesser extent from those of the fictitious ‘average member’. This means that in order to be adequately equipped for independent functioning in and with the foreign language, learners should have the insights and know-how required for bridging the gap between their individual needs and those provided for in the specifications of the general objective. And even if the gap is so wide that the learners may have to seek professional guidance, some insight into their own
learning potential and how to exploit this most effectively will be of considerable advantage to them.

Finally it should be said that the promotion of learner autonomy is a fundamental objective of the communicative approach adopted by the Council of Europe. That is to say the learners should be encouraged and enabled to take increasing charge of their own learning and to develop the attitudes, knowledge, understanding and skills which will enable them to do so. Insofar as the Threshold Level is the statement of a learning objective and not just a description of a certain level of proficiency, the skills involved in learning to learn are not simply a byproduct of some courses, but an essential aspect of that objective, which all teaching towards that objective should promote. As such they form an integral part of the objective, not an optional extra.

Thus, in describing what learners should be able to do with and through the use of language for communication, we legitimately take into account their use of the experience of language learning to become more efficient and effective language learners as well as language users. It is part of the Threshold Level objectives for learners to be willing and able to engage in the struggle to communicate in the situations confronting them with the resources and strategies they command, taking the risk of error, inviting and welcoming various forms of assistance from more experienced interlocutors and, systematically, to learn from the experience. It is also part of the objective that learners should actively seek opportunities for engaging in such encounters, exploiting not only the presence of native speakers in the environment but also the opportunities offered by radio and television broadcasts as well as printed and recorded material.

‘Learning to learn’, as we said above, should be incorporated into the Threshold Level objective, not as an additional objective that will affect the pragmatic/linguistic content but as one that is to be achieved through the form and manner of presentation and practice of this content or, indeed, through the individual's experience of the language. We shall formulate the learning-to-learn component in terms of a learning objective, but at a fairly high level of generality, leaving scope for a range of concrete realisations by individual learners with possibly different learning styles.

The ‘learning-to-learn’ objective

Concerning needs and objectives

1. The learners are aware of the nature of their communicative needs.
2. The learners are aware of the nature of the learning objective offered to them.
3 The learners have insight into the degree of relevance to their communicative needs of the learning objective offered to them.

4 In the areas covered by the open categories of Chapter 7 (Specific notions) the learners are able to identify, learn and use the terms specific to their own nationality, employment, leisure interests, etc.

5 The learners can identify those of their communicative needs, if any, which are not catered for in the objective offered to them.

6 The learners can describe, in general terms, additional objectives which will satisfy the needs referred to under 5 above and/or they can recognise the relevance to those needs of further objectives offered to them, for example:

   I'd like to read articles about economics.
   I'd like to write business letters.

II Concerning learning processes

1 The learners are familiar with the possibility of dividing an overall learning task into a number of sub-tasks, each with its own objective.

2 The learners are familiar with the distinction between productive ability and receptive ability and with the difference in degree of skill that may be required in order to meet the needs for each type of ability.

3 The learners are aware of the contributions of pragmatic, grammatical, lexical and phonological adequacy to communicative effectiveness.

4 The learners can identify the roles (acquisition of knowledge, of insight, of skill) of various types of learning materials and are aware of the potential relevance of such materials to the achievement of their objective.

5 The learners know how to find information about usage (e.g. in dictionaries, relevant reference works and reference grammars designed for use by non-advanced learners).

6 The learners have experienced various methods of vocabulary acquisition and have identified one or more that they consider particularly useful to themselves.

7 The learners are aware of the potential of learning through exposure to foreign language use and know how various compensation strategies may enable them to cope with texts containing unknown elements (cf. Chapter 9, note 3).
III Concerning learning from direct experience of the language

1. The learners are able to engage in communicative interaction using the resources and strategies specified at Threshold Level and to learn from experience.

2. The learners are able to observe the language and strategies used by a more experienced interlocutor and thus increase their own repertory of responses, receptive and productive.

3. The learners are, for instance, able as listeners and as readers to perceive, memorise and note down words and expressions not previously encountered, noting also their situational context and functional/notional value.

4. The learners are able to repeat back new words and expressions which occur in conversations in which they participate, to make use of them themselves as soon as appropriate and, by later making notes if necessary, add them to their repertory.

5. The learners are able to experiment with forms of expression (e.g. by re-combining known words and grammatical structures, or rules of word and structure formation), to note their acceptance or non-acceptance by more experienced speakers and, if need be, to modify the rules they operate.

6. The learners are able to employ compensation and repair strategies (cf. section 6 of Chapter 5), noting, learning and using new language supplied by their interlocutor.

IV Concerning evaluation

1. The learners can monitor their progress towards the terminal objective particularly by relating their communicative ability to successive intermediate objectives.

2. The learners are aware of the role of formative assessment as an aid to the planning of further learning activities.

The above analysis of 'learning to learn' is based on assumptions as to what may reasonably be expected to be feasible for learners at an early stage of foreign language learning without diverting too much of their attention from the actual task of learning to use the language itself.

Some learners may well find further items useful, such as ability to consult a reference grammar designed for use by non-advanced foreign learners. It is for the student, preferably with the advice of the teacher, to decide whether its use would facilitate learning at this level or require an expenditure of time and energy incommensurate with the modest requirements of the Threshold Level objective itself.
Several of the above items are formulated as 'the learners are aware of ...'. This obviously allows for different degrees of awareness, and no attempt is made to operationalise this concept. This simply means that, in our view, courses meant to lead up to Threshold Level should provide learners with the opportunity to develop the awareness concerned without, however, making any specific demands upon the learners in this respect.
14 Degree of skill

So far, in the present study, we have been concerned with what learners might have to be able to do in the foreign language in order to satisfy their needs and interests. What we have not dealt with is how they should be able to do all the things specified. We have – it is true – listed many exponents (language forms) and strategies that, together, might enable the learners to function economically and effectively in the situations they are most likely to find themselves in. However, the exponents have been offered merely by way of recommendation and the strategies have mostly been described in an open-ended manner.

All this is tantamount to saying that the level we have described is not uniform and fixed but that it allows of many different concretisations in accordance with the diversity of sub-groups and individual members of the target population. Consequently, it is not in itself either a testing syllabus or a course design. However, its high degree of explicitness allows it to be used as a basis for these. A test syllabus designer will then have to determine the exact nature of the concretisations that correspond to the purposes of the text envisaged and thus establish the criteria the learners will have to satisfy in order to pass the test.

Threshold Level 1990, then, is simply a learning objective, an aim to be pursued with and by the learners and which is specified in such a way that it can give meaningful direction to the planning of learning activities. It is not to be confused with actual learning effects. These will always differ from what is described in an objective. The extent of the difference that is acceptable is primarily a matter for individual learners to decide in accordance with their own needs and ambitions.

Consequently, in dealing with the question how and particularly how well the learners should be able to do what is specified in this objective we cannot go beyond very general statements which mainly concern minimal requirements for effective communication.

An attempt at communication is effective if the intention of a communicative act is realised. This is the case if the communicator is successful in conveying his or her intention to others and also in correctly interpreting others’ intentions that may be relevant to his or her own situation. This means that the main criterion to be applied is pragmatic adequacy. If a learner means to apologise humbly or to express doubt he/she communicates effectively if a communication partner understands that he or she is apologising humbly or expressing doubt. And if a learner wants to find out whether or not to wear a raincoat he/she is an effective communicator if he/she correctly interprets the relevant information in a weather forecast.
However, we should not jump to the conclusion that a learner who communicates successfully on one particular occasion has established his or her credentials as a good communicator and has reached the Threshold Level objective. Under favourable circumstances (a constraining situation and an alert, experienced and sympathetic native listener) communication may be unaffected by even gross phonetic, grammatical and lexical distortion. Speech recognition experiments show the great effect of the listener's expectations on identification. The same utterance may well fail to communicate under less constraining circumstances (if, say, the referent is unobservable and not deducible from context) or if the listener is less motivated or less experienced. In particular, non-native listeners are less able to cope with deviance than native speakers. This point is of particular relevance when English is used as a means of communication between non-native speakers of different mother tongues. A level of mother tongue interference which does not interfere seriously with communication with native speakers or with others who have the same mother tongue background may make conversation impossible, or lead to misunderstandings with serious consequences (e.g. where safety or security are involved) where the listener has to rely on the accurate identification of what has been said.

Thus, verbal communication cannot be reasonably assured without at least an approximation to certain grammatical, lexical and phonological norms. This means that errors in these areas that interfere with communicative effectiveness are not acceptable. This conclusion does not, however, automatically lead to the establishment of lists of acceptable and unacceptable deviations from norms.

By definition, any failure to distinguish phonemic pairs, or grammatical categories (e.g. tense/aspect distinctions), is capable of leading to misunderstanding, but the factors which decide whether or not it does so are so complex as to defy quantification. In a high proportion of cases listeners (especially native listeners) will be aware that the speech is deviant, but will understand what the speaker intends. Whether or not such errors are accepted in an otherwise successful communicative act depends on other considerations than those inherent in the present objective. Largely, this is a matter of the learners' personalities and their ambitions. A naturally shy person may be severely handicapped as a communicator by being conscious of frequently producing incorrect forms. And one who needs full acceptance as a communication partner in an environment that is intolerant of any manifestation of reduced competence will also need a higher degree of skill than many other learners. The Threshold Level, as specified in this document, does not in any way preclude the development of such a higher degree of skill but it does not require it of all the learners within its target group.
Yet it will be to all learners' advantage to set their sights a little higher than just 'pragmatic adequacy'. They should also aim at the ability to communicate with a certain degree of efficiency. Speakers who, when giving information about something, have to pause after every second word in order to find a way to continue, who make numerous grammatical and/or lexical mistakes even in short utterances, whose pronunciation does not conform to any standard their communication partner may be familiar with, etc., cannot be said to communicate efficiently because they put a great strain on those listening to them and run the risk of losing their audience altogether.

There is a similar lack of efficiency when listeners, in order to understand what is said to them, need constant repetition or oblige speakers to speak with unnatural slowness or to rephrase their sentences all the time so as to express themselves within an inadequately narrow range of vocabulary and grammar. It may be expected then, at Threshold Level, that, within the limits set by Threshold Level content:

- **as speakers** the learners can make themselves easily understood not only by listeners with native or near-native command of the language, but also under normal conditions by other non-native speakers who have reached Threshold Level;

- **as listeners** the learners can understand the essence of what is said to them not only by speakers with native or near-native command of the language, but also under normal conditions by other non-native speakers who have reached Threshold Level, without obliging the speakers to exert themselves unduly.

What was said of the learners as speakers will equally apply to the learners as writers. As writers, however, the learners are likely to wish to satisfy somewhat higher criteria of formal correctness, particularly in letters to strangers. Having access to appropriate reference works will enable them to satisfy such criteria more easily than in the production of spoken language.

In all that is said above with regard to efficiency of communication it is to be understood that a certain tolerance and co-operation is expected of the learners' communication partners. It would be unrealistic to assume that at Threshold Level the learners would be able to function adequately without this. Ability to function in more demanding situations as well does not necessarily require further learning efforts but will develop gradually as learners use the language in practice.
Appendix A  Pronunciation and intonation

Communication depends upon mutual intelligibility. That is to say that it is only possible if the language forms produced by the speaker are identified and understood by the listener. It is therefore the responsibility of speakers to pronounce them as intelligibly as possible, and it is also the responsibility of listeners actively to seek to identify what has been said and to use appropriate repair procedures if they are unable to do so. The ease of communication depends largely on the extent to which speaker and listener share a common practice. Speakers of the same dialect understand each other without difficulty, but widely separated dialects may well be mutually unintelligible. For purposes of national (or international) communication standard languages with standard pronunciations have generally developed, based usually on the speech of educated people in capital cities, or that of some other prestigious social group. The standard language is widely used in the education system, in the serious media and in middle-class life and culture. This is not to say that all users of a standard pronunciation sound alike. The speaker's socio-regional provenance may be clearly marked and easily detectable by an experienced listener. It may well be important to the individual's sense of identity that this should be so (e.g. Scottish English), but conformity to national norms is sufficient to ensure ready mutual intelligibility on a national scale. In Britain, this role is played by Received Pronunciation (RP) as codified by D. Jones, A. C. Gimson and others, and generally adopted by broadcasting authorities, dictionary makers, language course designers, etc. In its pure form, RP is the practice of a small but influential minority, but with increasing mobility and media exposure a high proportion of speakers use, either habitually or as required, a regionally-coloured approximation to RP which is universally intelligible. Regional variants differ mainly in vowel colouring. The consonant system (which has been shown to play the larger role in identifying speech) is relatively uniform and stable.

On a global scale, English is polycentric. There is no one form of English universally accepted as authoritative. Ireland, the USA, Canada and Australia have their own norms, each related to standard written English and to spoken dialectical variation in much the same way as RP. These norms are fully mutually intelligible and acceptable. All are products of the modern period and have undergone no major sound changes. There is increasingly frequent communication among the communities involved. In countries where English is not the native language, the British norm predominates in educational systems in countries which have recently become independent (India, Africa) and


more generally in Europe. The General American norm predominates in the Americas and is widely used in the entertainments industry and in industrial management, in which areas it has considerable influence on British usage. Those (e.g. teachers) who have spent a considerable period in one or another English-speaking country are, of course, likely to have learned to conform to its linguistic norms.

At the present time it seems reasonable in a European context to continue (as in the case of Spanish and French) to adhere to the norms of the European rather than the American variety.

At **Threshold Level**, learners should be able:

- as listeners, to identify the words and expressions used by native speakers of the (regionally coloured) standard variants of English (RP, Polite Scottish, Irish, General American and Australian) and by non-native speakers whose speech, though also regionally coloured, approximates to those norms;
- as speakers, to produce spoken English which is readily intelligible both to native speakers and to non-native speakers who approximate to standard norms.

Among the implications of these objectives are:

- learners should be given experience in listening to a variety of norms, and/or regionally coloured speech (including the principal non-native varieties) which approximate to those norms and remain fully intelligible;
- learners should target one of the native norms (which in a European context may well be British RP), but should not be required or expected to approximate to it more closely than is required for full intelligibility, not only to native English speakers, but also to other non-native learners who have reached **Threshold Level**.

Accordingly, learners at **Threshold Level** should be aware of the pronunciation in RP of the words and expressions proposed as exponents. That is to say:

- they will be aware of the relation between the sound and spelling of English words, avoiding simple orthoepic errors;
- they will be aware of and preserve in their own speech the vowel and, particularly, consonant contrasts of the English model they adopt;
- they will be aware of and preserve in their own speech the placement of stress in polysyllabic words;
- they will be able to distinguish by ear non-homophonous English words and expressions;
- they will be aware of some of the principal meaningful contrasts in
utterances carried by stress placement and intonation and will be able to recognise and understand them in the speech of others;

- they will be aware of the principal respects in which the accent of learners with their mother tongue background deviates from RP in ways which are likely to impede recognition and thus communication.

Some form of phonetic transcription conforming to the principles of the International Phonetic Association (IPA), e.g. that used in D. Jones: *An English Pronouncing Dictionary* (14th edn. ed. A. C. Gimson) or in one of the major monolingual or bilingual dictionaries may be found useful for raising awareness and for reference purposes, but does not in itself constitute part of the *Threshold Level* objective.

### Intonation

The intonation of English (RP) is described in detail in such works as G. F. Arnold and J. D. O’Connor: *The Intonation of Colloquial English*. It is used by native speakers on the one hand to indicate the informational structure of sentences and on the other to express nuances of meaning, to indicate unspoken implications or reservations and to convey attitudes and emotional states. As such it plays a very important part in communication and is a frequent source of intercultural misunderstandings. Learners at *Threshold Level* should recognise and understand the most common intonations used in RP for such purposes. In their own speech they should organise the phrasing, stressing and rhythm of tone groups in accordance with RP norms, and employ rising and falling nuclei appropriately.

Where language forms are cited in this book (e.g. as exponents of language functions or examples of grammatical or lexical entries) the most common intonation pattern (not always the only one possible) is shown in accordance with the conventions shown below. These conventions are similar, but not identical, to those used by Arnold and O’Connor.

A full treatment of English intonation is beyond the scope of this book. The most important features at *Threshold Level* are tone groups. For the most part, learners at *Threshold Level* will express themselves in fairly short simple sentences, each consisting of a single tone group. Within the tone group, stressed syllables are spoken in a regular rhythm, unstressed syllables being made to fit in between the beats. The stressed syllables of words which convey lexical information (mainly nouns, adjectives, principal verbs and adverbs) are given prominence in the intonation pattern, unless the information has already been mentioned or is obvious in context. In that case, whilst continuing to mark the rhythmic beat, they are not given pitch prominence. At
Threshold Level, two points of pitch prominence are of importance, the nucleus and the head. The last prominent stressed syllable in a tone group is its nucleus, which initiates a pitch pattern which continues to the end of the tone group, including any unstressed or stressed but non-prominent syllables that follow. The pattern used is closely related to the language function of the sentence and its grammatical category. At Threshold Level, five nuclear tones should be distinguished:

1 **Low falling** This is marked by a left to right diagonal falling mark, below the line of writing, placed before the nuclear syllable [ ]. This mark is to be interpreted as indicating that the next syllable is stressed. Its vowel starts on a clear, level low-mid tone. The voice then drops to a low creaky note and remains on this low pitch until the end of the tone group.

2 **High falling** This is similar to the low fall, except that the nuclear vowel starts on a pitch above the mid point. It is marked by placing the mark above the line of writing [ ].

3 **Low rising** This is marked by a rising mark placed before the nuclear syllable and below the line of writing [ ]. It indicates that the next syllable is stressed. Its vowel starts on a clear, low level pitch. There is then a continuous glide upward, but not rising above mid, until the end of the tone group. The glide occurs within the nuclear syllable if it is the last in the group. If it is followed by one or more non-prominent syllables (the 'tail'), stressed or unstressed, the nuclear syllable is spoken on a low level pitch and the rise spans the tail.

4 **High rising** This is shown by placing the rising mark above the line of writing [ ] . It indicates that the nuclear vowel starts somewhere between low and mid-level, and that the upward glide extends well above mid.

5 **Falling rising** This may be seen as a sequence of 2 and 3. The nuclear vowel sound starts high-mid pitch and drops to a low creak. An upward glide follows, which does not go above mid. This tone is indicated by a v-shaped mark placed before the nuclear syllable above the line of writing [ ] . Threshold Level learners should be made aware of the following uses of nuclear tones and be stimulated to use them themselves as appropriate.

1 **Low falling** [ ] is used
   a) in declarative sentences
      i) for factual statements e.g. identifying, defining, describing and narrating as well as in answers to wh questions (which may be short phrases or single words);
      'This is a , door. They 'drove to , London. ' Dogs are , animals.
      ii) for expressing definite agreement or disagreement, firm denials, firm acceptance or rejection of an offer, definite
statements of intention, obligation, granting or withholding permission, etc. In general, it indicates an unambiguous certainty.
That's 'quite right. You 'must eat your dinner.

b) in interrogative sentences answerable by yes or no

i) in interrogation, to indicate that an answer is demanded;
'Have you -seen this -man be,fore?

ii) in requests to indicate that they are in effect orders;
'May I ·see your ,driving -licence, ·please? ·Will you 'please be ,quiet.

iii) when a series of yes/no questions is posed in rapid succession;
'Is it ,red? 'Can you ,eat it? 'Is it a ,cabbage?

iv) in tag questions, to invite agreement to a statement that is not in doubt;
'This -tastes ,nice, | ,doesn't it?

v) in choice questions, to indicate that the list of options is closed.
'Would you prefer ,tea | or ,coffee?

c) in wh questions as a definite request for a piece of information
'Where is the ,toilet, ·please?

d) in imperative sentences

i) as a direct order or prohibition;
'Sit ,down. 'Don't ·smoke in ,here, ·please.

ii) as an instruction;
,'Push to 'open the ,door.

iii) as a strong form of offer.
'Have ·one of ,my ciga-rettes.

2 High falling [·] is used

a) in declarative sentences

i) in exclamations to indicate surprise, protest, enthusiasm, emphasis or insistence;
That's 'excellent! You are 'hurting me! 'Fancy 'that!

ii) to indicate contrast with an element previously mentioned or believed to be in the listener's mind.
'No, | Mount 'Elburz is the ·highest ·mountain in ·Europe.

b) in interrogative sentences, both those answerable by yes or no and wh questions

i) to insist on an answer being given;
'Did you 'post ·that ·letter?
ii) to indicate surprise or irritation;
   'Are you 'still ·not ·ready?

iii) in rhetorical questions of an exclamatory type, to which no answer is sought;
   'Isn't she 'beautiful?

iv) in tag questions, to insist on the hearer's agreement to a proposition.
   'I 'told ·you | 'didn't I?

c) in imperative sentences
   i) to insist on an order or prohibition where compliance is in doubt;
      'Stop it, I ·say. 'Don't 'listen ·to him.

   ii) to indicate the urgency of an instruction (e.g. because of imminent danger);
      'Stop. 'Don't 'move.

   iii) to insist on the acceptance of an offer.
      'Do let me 'help you.

3  Low rising [.] is used

a) in declarative sentences
   i) (with preceding low pitches) to indicate difference or resentment, guardedness, suspicion:
      It ·doesn't ,matter. You ·shouldn't ·blame ,me.

   ii) (with preceding high pitch) to reassure.
      There's 'no ·need to be ,worried.

b) in interrogative questions, answerable by yes or no
   i) to ask politely for confirmation or disconfirmation (also in tag questions);
      You're 'French, ,aren't you?

   ii) to make polite requests and offers;
      'Would you ·please ·open the ,window? 'Can I do ·anything to ,help?

   iii) in choice questions, to indicate that the list is open.
      'Would you ·like ,tea | or ,coffee | or ·something ,stronger?

c) in wh questions
   i) to indicate polite interest rather than a need for information;
      'Where are you ·spending your ,holidays?

   ii) to avoid the appearance of interrogation or peremptory questioning.
      'What are you ,doing ·there?
d) in imperative sentences for gentle commands, especially to children, hospital patients, etc.

'Come and have your nice bath. 'Just drink this medicine nicely.

4 High rising ['] is used

a) in declarative sentences (including isolated phrases and words used instead of full sentences)

i) to convert a statement into a question;
   You were born in Scotland?

ii) to query what someone has said.
    You say you're thirsty?

b) in interrogative questions answerable by yes or no

i) (with preceding low pitch) to indicate a casual enquiry;
   (Would you) care for a sandwich?

ii) to repeat a question (with change of 1st and 2nd person) before answering.
    A sandwich? Would I care for a sandwich?

c) in wh questions

i) to repeat a question (with change of 1st and 2nd person) before answering;
   ('Where do you live?) Where do I live?

ii) (with the wh word as nucleus) to ask for repetition of information given but not heard (or understood).
    (He lives in (unintelligible)).
    He lives where? Where does he live?

d) in imperative sentences to repeat an order, instruction or offer while deciding whether or how to comply
   ('Sit down, please.) Sit down? 'Why not?

5 Falling-rising ['] is used

a) in declarative sentences to convey various implications

i) warnings;
   That jug is hot!

ii) corrections;
   Her dress is green, you know. It isn't blue.

iii) demurrer and limited agreement (with implied disagreement on the major issue);
    I don't know if I agree with that. 'Yes, he is an active person.
iv) mental reservations in making promises;
    ‘Yes, I’ll try.’

v) uncertainty and hesitation;
    ‘Yes, possibly. I can’t be certain.’

vi) to soften the effect of bad news, conflict of views, etc.;
    ‘You haven’t done very well, I’m afraid.
    You’re wrong, you know.’

vii) (with attached tag questions) anxious query;
    ‘Do you love me, don’t you?’

viii) discouragement of a possible course of action;
    ‘You can go to the cinema if you like.’

ix) tentative advice;
    ‘If I were you ...’

x) implying that something has been left unsaid, which contrasts
    with, or contradicts what has been overtly stated;
    ‘Your opinion is interesting. (implying: but I don’t agree with
    it).’

xi) to query what has been said, implying that it is mistaken or
    untrue.
    ‘Seven eights are fifty-four?’

b) in interrogative questions answered by yes or no

i) to add a note of warning or doubt;
    ‘Are you sure you locked the door?’

ii) when giving the answer to the question may be unwelcome to
    the person giving it.
    ‘Have you thought what might happen if you did?’

c) in wh questions

i) to repeat a question, focusing on the key issue in contrast with
    other possible issues;
    ‘What did I do on Friday of last week?’

ii) (with the wh word as nucleus) to query a statement, implying
    scepticism regarding the element queried by the wh word
    employed.
    ‘Where did he find your purse?’

d) in imperative sentences

i) for issuing warnings rather than commands or instructions;
    ‘Watch where you’re going. Don’t try to pull the door open.’

ii) (with the imperative as nucleus) for pleading.
    ‘Do try to be a little more careful.’
Every tone group contains a nucleus. Many short utterances will comprise a single tone group, containing only one prominent syllable, which is then the nucleus of the tone group. Where there is more than one prominent syllable, the last of these is the nucleus and the first is the head. The head is usually marked by a jump up in pitch to a high-mid level. The actual pitch varies from mid to high, depending on the attitude of the speaker towards what he is saying and towards the hearer. The higher the level, the more cheerful and friendly the speaker sounds. The (high) head is marked in the texts by an upright line before the syllable concerned, above the line of writing ['].

Non-prominent syllables, stressed or unstressed, which precede the head, are spoken on a low mid pitch. Those following a high head are kept on the same level, or form a descending sequence. Those following the nucleus conform to the configuration of the nucleus, as elaborated above. Stressed non-prominent syllables are marked in texts by a dot raised to mid-letter height [']. As stated, they mark rhythmic beats in the utterance, but have no effect on the pitch pattern. Non-prominent unstressed syllables are left unmarked.

Many, perhaps most, short exchanges in conversation – especially the contributions of learners at Threshold Level – consist of single tone groups. Longer utterances may simply juxtapose tone groups as already described. However, compound (and, but, either, or) and complex (if, because, when) sentences may have two or more closely linked tone groups. Only in the last of these has the nucleus the functions listed above. The sequence is then termed a major tone group, and its completion is shown in a text with the mark [||]. The constituent minor tone groups are marked [ ]. The following are the most common types of sequence, and should be within the productive and receptive competence of Threshold Level learners:

1. Unemphatic, non-constructive sentences
   - non-final
     - low rising
     - final group
       - low falling
     'When you ·see ,John |
     'tell him to ,phone me.||

2. Contrasting
   - falling–rising
     - high falling
     - But ·when you see ·Harry |
     'tell him I've ·left the ·country.||

3. Main statement and modifier
   - (non-contrastive)
     - low falling
     - low rising
     - I'm ·leaving for ·Germany |
     on ·Friday.||

4. Main statement and supplement
   - low fall
     - low fall
     - He ·lives in ·London |
     in ·a ·semi-de-tached ·house in ·Peckham.||
5 In all cases of apposition, the same nuclear tone is used for both tone
groups. The word too similarly repeats the tone of its antecedent
nucleus.

'John, Smith, a computer programmer lives in Cambridge, a
university city.'
His brother lives there, too.'

*Note* In this document, |||| is omitted at the end of examples consisting
of a single sentence.
Appendix B  Grammatical summary

This summary presents a classified inventory of the grammatical categories, elements and structures which figure as exponents of the functional and notional categories set out in Chapters 5–7.

Many critics of the original Threshold Level appear to have formed the impression that the functional and notional organisation adopted implied a neglect of grammar. We trust that a representation of grammatical content in a more systematic form than that originally adopted (which alphabetised the presentation for ease of reference) may correct that impression. In fact, the grammatical content is very rich and a learner who was able to exploit fully the resources required for the realisation of the range of functions and, particularly, general notions set out in Chapters 5 and 6 would have progressed well beyond what is to be expected from two years’ part-time study. We therefore include some suggestions as to what use a learner can be expected to make of the grammatical resources, productively and receptively, in speech and writing, following the principles set out in the later chapters of the book. The symbol ⬤ is employed in this chapter only to mark categories and exponents similarly marked in Chapter 5–7. It is not implied that all those unmarked are available for both receptive and productive use. Instead, users are recommended to follow the instructions made.

The order of presentation is ascending. That is to say that we first present grammatical information at the word level, classified according to the traditional parts of speech with which we expect most users to be familiar. Information is provided concerning the forms of words. Sub-classes are established in terms of the types and functions of words in the major classes set up. Phrases and clauses are then classified according to their formal structure and functional roles in the sentence. Finally, sentences are classified according to their structure and function. At all points cross-reference is made to the relevant sections of Chapters 5, 6 and 7. The same form of reference is used as that employed in the word index, i.e. first the chapter then the section and sub-sections into which the chapter is divided. So, for example, 6.3.2 refers to section 3.2 in Chapter 6. Examples are given, using only vocabulary which figures as exponents of the functional and notional categories presented in Chapters 5, 6 and 7 and collected together in the word index. The examples themselves give some idea of the range of expression made possible – far from the touristic minimalism some critics have deplored.
The summary is not conceived as a teaching or reference grammar of English, but as a guide to the resources to which a learner has access as a result of learning English to Threshold Level.

We trust that with a little experience users will find that the systematic presentation enables reference to be made quickly and efficiently as a further aid to curricular planning and course construction.

A Word level

A 1 Nouns

1.1 Types of noun

1.1.1 proper nouns (written with an initial capital letter)

These are not specified at Threshold Level, their relevance being a matter of personal experience. It is expected that a learner will be able to recognise or elicit and confirm the phonetic form of an unfamiliar proper name as well as to ask for and note down its spelling.

1.1.1.1 names of persons, towns and villages, brand names of products, etc.

 names of days (6.3.2), months (6.3.2, 7.1.4), cities (7.1.2), continents (7.1.2), countries (7.1.2), festivals (6.3.3), nationalities and languages (7.1.8), national currencies (7.9.6), political parties (7.6.5) and religions (7.1.12)

1.1.2 common nouns denoting uncountables

1.1.2.1 abstract, e.g. arts, sports and games (7.4.7), cardinal numbers (6.3.1, 6.4.1, 7.1.3), colours (6.5.1.9), points of the compass (6.2.1, 6.2.5)

1.1.2.2 nouns denoting materials, or mass substances, e.g. drinks (7.6.6, 7.10.1), foodstuffs (7.10.1), foods (7.3.1, 7.5.5, 7.10.1), means of transport (7.5.1, 7.5.2)

1.1.2.3 verbal nouns (gerund) e.g. heating (5.2.3), parking (5.5.3)

1.1.3 common nouns denoting countables: individuals, e.g. family members (7.1.11), job holders (7.1.10), animals (7.2.8), plants (7.2.8), objects such as clothes (7.9.3) and household articles (7.9.5), events such as accidents (7.7.4), measures (6.2.8.2, 4, 5)

1.2 Number (6.4.1)

1.2.1 regular written plural forms

1.2.1.1 -es added to singular form ending:

 s address, addresses
 x box, boxes
 z quiz, quizzes (note - zz)
 sh brush, brushes
 ch match, matches
 o tomato, tomatoes
 (but piano, pianos)
 (following a consonant only),
 y lady, ladies (note i for y)

1.2.1.2 s added to singular form in other cases, including f(e) replaced by ve:

 wife, wives
 thief, thieves
1.2.2 regular spoken plural forms

1.2.2.1 /z/ added to singular form ending:
/s/ /glas:/ /glə:siz/ glass
/z/ /saiz/ /saiziz/ size
/j/ /diz:/ /diziz/ dish
/3/ /gærə:/ /gærə:3iz/ garage
/tʃ/ /tʃɜ:tʃ/ /tʃɜ:tʃiz/ church
/dʒ/ /dʒɔdʒ/ /dʒɔdʒiz/ judge

1.2.2.2 /s/ added to singular form ending:
/p/ /stəp/ /stəps/ stop
/t/ /ædəlt/ /ædəltʃ/ adult
/k/ /bæk/ /bæks/ back
/l/ /laif/ /laifs/ laugh

1.2.2.3 /z/ added to singular form
in other cases, including
/θ,ʃ/ replaced by /ð,ʃ:
/baθ/ /baθəz/ bath
/næf/ /næfs/ laugh

1.2.3 irregular plural forms
child, children (7.1.11)
foot, feet (7.7.1)
man, men (7.1.6)
tooth, teeth (7.7.1)
woman, women (7.1.6)
penny, pence (7.9.6)

1.2.4 The following nouns are found in the plural only:
clothes (7.9.3)
means (6.7.3.9)
people (6.8.2)
scissors (7.7.3)
tights (7.9.3)
trousers (7.9.3)

1.2.5 The following nouns are found in the singular only:
information (7.5.1)
luggage (7.5.6)
furniture (7.2.3)
news (7.4.3)

1.2.5.1 uncountable nouns (except in
the sense of 'kinds of')
(cf. A 1.1.2 above)
sugar (7.10.1)
unemployment (7.3.2)

1.3 Genitive

1.3.1 forms

1.3.1.1 spoken /z,s,iz/ (for use cf.
A 1.2.2 above) added to:

1.3.1.2 (written), 's:
all singular nouns
the man's head
plural nouns not ending in s
the children's room

1.3.1.3 ' (written only; no affix in
speech) added to plural nouns
ending s
my aunts' house

1.3.2 Use

At Threshold Level, ability to use
the genitive productively is
required only with nouns
denoting persons or animals.
In other cases, of + NP may be
used. The learners will be able
to understand also such
phrases as: a day's work, our
country's Prime Minister.

Learners should be able to use
the genitive to express the
possessive relation (6.7.5.1),
including ownership, but also
other relationships such as
parts of the body, kinship,
social roles, mental and
physical attributes and
activities, etc.
Mary's feet, John's mother, the
secretary's boss, the actor's
performance, etc.
A 2 Pronouns

2.1 Types of pronoun

2.1.1 demonstrative (5.1.1, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2)
this, that, these, those

2.1.2 personal (5.1.1, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2)

2.1.2.1 subject forms
I, you, he, she, it, we, they

2.1.2.2 non-subject forms
me, you, him, her, it, us, them

2.1.3 possessive (6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2)
mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs

2.1.4 relative (6.8.1.2)who, whom,
which, that

2.1.5 interrogative (5.1.4, 6.8.1.1)
who, whom, what, which,
whose

2.1.6 reflexive/emphatic (6.8.1.2)
myself, yourself, himself,
herself, itself, ourselves,
yourselves, themselves

2.1.7 prop word (6.8.1.2)
one

2.1.8 indefinite (6.8.2)
somebody, someone,
something; anybody, anyone,
anything; nobody, no-one,
nothing; everybody, everyone,
everything; some, all, any,
none, each, both, it, you

2.2 Gender (3rd person singular only): masculine, feminine, neuter

2.2.1 forms
personal pronouns (subject)
he/she/it
(non-subject)
him/her/it

reflexive/emphatic
himself/herself/itself
possessive
his/hers

2.2.2 Use
At Threshold Level, learners
should be able to use the
pronouns he or she
corresponding to the sex of the
person or animal referred to,
using it in other cases, e.g. for
plants, things and abstracts.
They should be aware of the
traditional use of
he/him/himself/his to refer
anaphorically to a non-sex-
specific personal noun and also
of the alternative use of the
plural forms, which are not
gender-marked.
A 'good, teacher | 'helps his
students to pass their
exami,nations as against
A 'good, teacher | 'helps his
students to pass their
exami,nations.

A 3 Determiners

3.1 Definite article (5.1.1, 6.8.1.1)

3.1.1 forms
(written) the
(spoken) stressed /ði:/
'She is the woman in my life.
unstressed before a
consonant /ðə/
'Where's the toilet?
unstressed before a vowel /ði/
'What is the EU?

3.1.2 Use

3.1.2.1 with uniques
The sun is shining.
(7.14.1)
3.1.2.2 with uniques for a given person or situation
'Send for the doctor. (7.7.5)

3.1.2.3 generically
The 'cow | 'eats ,grass | and 'makes ,milk. (7.2.8)

3.1.2.4 anaphorically
'Italy is ,beautiful | and I 'like the -country -very ,much.

3.1.2.5 when defined by an adjectival phrase or clause
the 'man over ,there
the 'woman I saw ,yesterday

3.2 Indefinite article (6.8.2)
3.2.1 forms
(written)
before consonants a
before vowels an
(spoken)
stressed /æn/, /æn/
unstressed /ən/, /ən/

3.2.2 Use
3.2.2.1 for an unspecified person or thing (6.8.2)
There is a ,man out·side.
'May I have an ,orange?

3.2.2.2 to designate frequency (6.3.1.7)
'Take the medicine 'twice a ,day.

3.2.2.3 to designate amount (6.4.2)
Apples cost '35·p a ,pound.

3.3 demonstrative (6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2)
this, that, these those

3.4 possessive (6.7.5.1, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2)
my, your, his, her, its, our, their

3.5 relative (6.8.1.2)
whose ●

3.6 interrogative (6.8.1.1)
which, whose ●

3.7 quantitative
3.7.1 indefinite (6.4.2)
some, any, no, every, much, many, more, most, several, few

3.7.2 distributive (6.8.2)
each

3.8 identifying (6.4.1)
another

3.9 pre-determiners all (6.4.2)
'All the ·guests have ar,ived.
such ● (6.4.3)
He is 'such a ,strange ·man.

3.10 post-determiners
3.10.1 cardinal numerals (6.4.1)
one, two, three, etc.

3.10.2 ordinal numbers (6.4.1)
first, second, third, etc.

3.10.3 identifying (6.7.4.1) other
The 'pain is in the 'other ·leg.

A 4 Adjectives

4.1 Participial
4.1.1 present, active Vinf + ing
'a 'working ·mother
'This ,novel is ,boring.

4.1.2 past, passive Vinf + ed/en
'a 'closed ·door
My 'pen is 'broken.

4.2 Attributive/predicative
4.2.1 attributive only
daily, weekly, main

4.2.2 predicative only
alive, all right, ill, well, so-so

4.2.3 other adjectives are used both attributively and predicatively

4.3 Gradable/non-gradable
4.3.1 non-gradable
4.3.1.1 numerals (6.4.1)
4.3.1.2 material (6.5.1.14)
4.3.1.3 categorial
married/single (7.1.7)
open/closed (6.5.1.12)
4.3.2 gradable
4.3.2.1 polar
old/young (6.5.1.10)
long/short (6.2.8.2)
large ●/small (6.2.8.1)
wide/narrow ● (6.2.8.1)
4.3.2.2 neutralised polar
'How old is your baby?'
4.3.2.3 non-polar
colours (6.5.1.9)
taste (6.5.1.6)
smell (6.5.1.7)
4.4 Comparison of gradable adjectives (6.4.3, 6.7.4.2)
4.4.1 comparative of equality (6.7.4.1)
4.4.1.1 such
'Such men are dangerous.'
4.4.1.2 like
'This tastes like cheese.'
4.4.1.3 (the) same (as) (6.7.4.1)
'One car is the same as another.'
4.4.1.4 as + adj + as (6.7.4.2)
'That stone is as sharp as a knife.'
4.4.2 comparative of inequality
different (from) (6.7.4.1)
Maltese is different from Italian.
not so + adj + as ● (6.7.4.2)
'Wood is not so heavy as metal.'
4.4.3 comparative degree (6.7.4.2)
regular forms
4.4.3.1 (of monosyllabic adjectives)
adj+er
'a longer journey
4.4.3.2 (of disyllabic adjectives with -y)
deleting -y and adding -ier
the heavier suitcase
4.4.3.3 (of some other disyllabics)
adj+er
'a quieter room
4.4.3.4 (of other polysyllabic adjectives) more + adj
a more comfortable chair
4.4.3.5 (of negative adjectives with un-)
more + un-+ adj alternatively
a more unpleasant occupation
less + positive adj
a less pleasant occupation
4.4.4 superlative degree (6.7.4.2)
regular forms
4.4.4.1 (of monosyllabic adjectives)
adj+est
the oldest man alive
4.4.4.2 (of disyllabic adjectives with -y)
deleting -y and adding -iest
the earliest train
4.4.4.3 (of some other disyllabics)
adj+est
the bitterest pill
4.4.4.4 (of other polysyllabic adjectives)
most + adj
the most useful dictionary
4.4.5 irregular comparatives
good, better, best, bad, worse, worst
4.5 Complementising adjectives
(i.e. adjectives regularly taking particular complementation structures. See C2.1.1.4 below.)
4.5.1 of probability (5.2.9–10)
   possible, probable

4.5.2 of certainty (5.2.13–14)
   certain, sure

4.5.3 of evaluation (6.5.2)
   good, bad, wrong

4.5.4 denoting emotional states
   (5.2.29–50)
   happy, glad, sorry

4.5.5 denoting moral obligations
   (5.2.19)
   allowed, permitted, free

4.5.6 denoting physical qualities
   (6.5.1)
   hard, hot, dry

4.5.7 denoting moral qualities
   (5.2.49, 5.3.3)
   kind, nice, good

4.5.8 denoting order (6.3.9)
   first, second, next, last

5.1.9 posteriority (6.3.8)
   afterwards

5.1.10 sequence (6.3.9)
   then, next, first, secondly, last

5.1.11 simultaneity (6.3.10)
   at the same time

5.1.12 future reference (6.3.11)
   soon, tomorrow

5.1.13 present reference (6.3.12)
   now, still

5.1.14 past reference (6.3.13)
   just, recently

5.1.15 frequency (6.3.17)
   always, often, sometimes

5.1.16 intermittence (6.3.19)
   sometimes

5.1.17 permanence (6.3.20)
   always

5.1.18 repetitiousness (6.3.22)
   again

5.1.19 uniqueness (6.3.23)
   (only) once

5.1.20 change (6.3.27)
   suddenly

5.1.21 preferences (5.2.27)
   rather ... than

5.2 Form

5.2.1 simple
   fast, hard, now, etc.

5.2.2 adverb
   quickly, certainly, etc.

5.3 Types of adverb

5.3.1 indefinite (6.8.2)
   anywhere, everywhere, somewhere, nowhere, always, never, sometimes

5.3.2 deictic (6.8.1.1) (and
   anaphoric (6.8.1.2))
   here, there, now, then
5.3.3 interrogative (6.8.1.1) relative (6.8.1.2)

5.3.3.1 time
when (?)
'When will he ,come?
I ,heard him ·when he ·left.

5.3.3.2 place
where (?)
'Where is my ,pen?
'This | is ·where it ,is.

5.3.3.3 manner
how (?)
'How do you ,know?
I ,know | ·how to ,do it.

5.3.3.4 reason
why (?)
'Why did he ,go?
I ,know | ·why he ,went.

5.4 Comparison of gradable adverbs

5.4.1 monosyllabic fast
5.4.1.1 comparative: adv+er faster
5.4.1.2 superlative: adv+est fastest

5.4.2 polysyllabic (adj+ly) gladly
5.4.2.1 comparative: more + adv more gladly
5.4.2.2 superlative: most + adv most gladly.
but early, earlier, earliest (not adj+ly)

5.4.3 irregular comparatives well, better, best;
badly, worse, worst;
far, further, furthest;
little, less, least

5.4.4 Comparison of gradable adverbs

A 6 Preposition

6.1 Types

6.1.1 of position (6.2.2)
above ●, against, among ● at,
before ●, behind, below ●,
between, in, inside ●, on,
opposite, outside, over, round,
derunder, with

6.1.2 distance (6.2.3)
near

6.1.3 direction (6.2.5)
across ●, along, down ●, for,
from, into, off, past, through,
to, towards ●, up ●

6.1.4 origin (6.2.6)
from,

6.1.5 arrangement (6.2.7)
after, before, between, among

6.1.6 time (6.3)
6.1.6.1 point of time (6.3.3)
at, by, in, on

6.1.6.2 duration (6.3.4)
during, for, from ... to,
since, till, until ●

6.1.6.3 anteriority (6.3.7)
before

6.1.6.4 posteriority (6.3.8)
after

6.1.6.5 future reference (6.3.11)
in

6.1.6.6 frequency (6.3.17)
on

6.1.7 manner (6.7.3.9)
as, by, with

6.1.8 agency (6.7.3.1)
by

6.1.9 instrumentality (6.7.3.4)
with, through
A7 Verbs

7.1 Types of verb

7.1.1 intransitive verbs, denoting:

7.1.1.1 actions
dance, play (7.4.4)
talk (7.6.2)

7.1.1.2 motion (6.2.4)
come, go, fall, leave, move follow

7.1.1.3 existence (6.1.1)
be, exist, happen (5.1.4.3, 6.1.4)

7.1.1.4 weather conditions (7.14.1)
rain, snow

7.1.2 transitive (passim)
bring, take, carry, kill
pull, push, put

7.1.3 causative (6.7.3.6)
have, get, make

7.1.4 inchoative (6.3.27)
become, get, go, turn fall, start (5.5.3.5, 6.2.4)

7.1.5 resultative
win, lose (7.4.7)
qualify, pass (7.3.5)
succeed

7.1.6. factitive
make (6.1.1, 6.5.1.14, 7.3.1, 7.4.6)
cook (7.3.1)

7.1.7 complementising verbs (i.e.
verbs with clausal complementation. See
B 6.5.1.4 and C 2.1.1.5 below.)
denoting:

7.1.7.1 cognitive attitudes (5.2)
think, believe, know
forget, remember, wonder

7.1.7.2 volition (5.2.23–27)
like, want, intend, prefer

7.1.7.3 emotions (5.2.29–44)
love, hate, enjoy, care,
surprise, expect, hope

7.1.7.4 commencement (6.3.24)
begin, start

7.1.7.5 cessation (6.3.25)
end, stop, finish

7.1.7.6 sensory perception (6.5.1.4–7)
watch, hear, see, taste, smell,
look

7.1.7.7 suasion (6.6.2)
order, tell, request,
recommend, invite, forbid, ask,
teach

7.1.7.8 reflection (6.6.1)
think, believe, hope, know

7.1.7.9 expression (6.6.2)
say, answer, ask, tell
7.1.7.10 appearance (5.2.13)
   seem

7.2 Simple forms: regular
7.2.1 infinitive: (to +) verb stem
   (to) accept, agree, live, try
7.2.2 participles:
7.2.2.1 present: verb stem (less -e after consonant) + ing
   accepting, agreeing, living, trying
7.2.2.2 past
7.2.2.2.1 (written)
   verb stem +(e)d
   (replacing y by i after consonant)
   accepted, agreed, lived, tried
7.2.2.2.2 (spoken)
   verb stem + /t/ after /p, k, s, f, tʃ/
   hoped, asked, laughed, crossed, danced, mixed, pushed, watched
   verb stem + /d/ after all other consonants and all vowels
7.2.3 gerund: as present participle
7.2.4 finite
7.2.4.1 present (6.3.11, 12, 14)
   I/you/we/they accept, agree, live, try
   verb stem (+ (e)s in 3rd person singular)
   he/she/it accepts, agrees, lives, tries
7.2.4.2 past: as past participle

7.3 Simple forms: irregular
7.3.1 be
   non-finite a) simple infinitive
   be
   b) present participle
   being
   c) past participle
   been
   d) gerund
   being
   finite a) unmarked (present)
   I am, you/we/they are,
   he/she/it is
   b) past
   I/he/she/it was
   you/we/they were
7.3.2 have
   non-finite a) simple infinitive
   have
   b) present participle
   having
   c) past participle
   had
   d) gerund
   having
   finite a) present
   I/you/we/they have/has
   he/she/it has/has'
   b) past
   had/had'
7.3.3 do
   non-finite a) simple infinitive
   do
   b) present participle
   doing
   c) past participle
   done
   d) gerund
   doing
   finite a) present
   I/you/we/they do,
   he/she/it does
   b) past
   did
7.3.4 Modal auxiliary verbs
   These have no non-finite forms, but only unmarked (present) and past finite forms, positive and negative:
can  can't  could  couldn't  let  lie  mean  meet  pay  put  ride  say  see  sell  send  show  shut  sing  sleep  speak  spend  stand  steal  strike  swim  take  teach  tell  think  throw  understand  undo  wear  win  write  let  lay  made  met  paid  put  ridden  said  seen  sold  sent  shown  shut  sung  slept  spoken  spent  stood  stolen  struck  swum  taken  taught  told  thought  thrown  understood  undone  worn  won  written

1.3.5 Other irregular verbs differ from regular verbs only in a) the past finite and b) the past participle. The a) infinitive, b) past finite and c) past participle forms for irregular verbs which figure as exponents in the Threshold Level specifications are:

| become    | became   | become    | come     | come     | cost     | cost     | cut     | cut     | do       | did      | draw     | drew     | drive    | drove    | drink    | drank    | eat      | ate      | fall     | fell     | feel     | felt     | fight    | fought   | find     | found    | fly      | flew     | forbid   | forbade  | forget   | forgot   | forgive  | forgave  | freeze   | froze    | get      | got      | give     | gave     | go       | went     | have     | had      | hold     | held     | hurt     | hurt     | keep     | kept     | know     | knew     | leave    | left     |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|

7.4 Compound forms (regular and irregular)

7.4.1 forms

7.4.1.1 perfective

7.4.1.2 progressive (continuous)

7.4.1.3 passive
7.4.1.4 modal auxiliary + infinitive

7.4.2 Use
Of the many combinations which are possible, learners at Threshold Level should be able to use productively:

7.4.2.1 modal + simple infinitive (5.2.15-20; 5.2.22; 5.3; 6.3.11)
The train will arrive at 10 p.m.

7.4.2.2 present continuous (6.3.12, 21)
'Are you listening to me?

7.4.2.3 past continuous (6.3.13, 18)
The car was waiting for us when we arrived.

7.4.2.4 present perfect (6.3.7, 12, 18)
We have often been to Paris.

7.4.2.5 past perfect (6.3.7)
I had never seen her before.

7.4.3 Learners should also be aware of other combinations and understand their gist.
I've been waiting for a long time.
If I had known, I would have told you.

7.5 Uses of be, have, and do

7.5.1 be

7.5.1.1 (as copula) + predicative adjective
John is tired.

7.5.1.2 (as copula) + noun phrase (5.1.1.4)
Mary is a hospital worker.

7.5.1.3 (as copula) + prepositional phrase (6.2.1)
Cornwall is in the West of England.

7.5.1.4 (as copula) + adverb
Our guests are here.

7.5.1.5 existential (6.1)
There are 30 cows on the farm.

7.5.1.6 (+ from) origin (7.1.9)
She is from New Zealand.

7.5.1.7 age (6.5.1.10)
He is six.

7.5.1.8 point of time (6.3.3)
It is 6 p.m.

7.5.1.9 to act as a part (7.4.4)
Judi Dench is Lady Macbeth.

7.5.1.10 (perfective aspect + to) to visit (6.2.1)
She has never been to London.

7.5.1.11 to cost (6.5.2.1)
'How much are those trousers?

7.5.1.12 (as auxiliary) + present participle (continuous aspect) (6.3.12, 13)
She is reading a book.

7.5.1.13 (as auxiliary) + past participle (passive voice) cf. A 7.7.9 below (5.3.7, 6.7.3)
'England were defeated by Australia.

7.5.2 have

7.5.2.1 possession i.e. ownership or the right to use the objects, accommodation, transport, services, etc. (6.7.5.1)
They have a house in the country.

7.5.2.2 attribution, e.g. name (5.5.2)
He has a name I can't pronounce.
address (7.1.2)
They have an address in Mayfair.
telephone number (7.1.3)
We have a new telephone number.
family (7.1.11)
She has 'four ,children | and 'six ,grandchildren.

friends (7.6.1)
We have 'friends in ,Strasbourg.

occupation (7.1.10)
salary (7.3.3)
She has a 'new ,job | and a 'better ,salary.

accommodation (7.2.1, 2)
We have a 'flat in ,Islington.

pets (7.2.8)
Our -daughter has a 'cat and a ,dog.

hobbies (7.4.2)
My -husband has an un'usual ,hobby.

bank account (7.11.4), etc.
They -say he has a 'bank ac-count in ,Switzerland.

qualifications (7.8.3)
My 'son has a de-gree in ,economics.

7.5.2.3 characteristics, e.g. size (6.2.8), shape (6.5.1.1),
taste (6.5.1.6), smell (6.5.1.7), colour (6.5.1.9)
'Leaves | have 'many -different ,colours, | , shapes | and ,sizes.

7.5.2.4 part-whole relations,
The -plane has 'four ,engines.

membership of clubs, parties, etc.
Our -club has '2,000 ,members.

to get, receive, e.g. guests (7.5.5), a letter (7.6.3)
We have ,guests | this ,weekend.

to take part in, experience or undergo a process or event, e.g. meals (7.3.1)
We had a 'good ,meal | -last ,night.
(7.10.1, 2), toiletry (7.7.3)
You 'must have a ,bath | or a 'good ,wash.

leisure activities, hobbies (7.4)
We are -having a 'party | to,night. 'Do ,come!

holidays, travel (7.5)
'Have a -good ,journey ,home!

ailments (7.7.4)
She has a 'bad ,cold.

operation (7.7.4)
'When is she -having her oper,ation?

appointments (7.7.5)
'Have you an ap,pointment with the -doctor?

education (7.8)
She 'had her edu,cation | in ,France.

weather (7.14)
We had a 'thunderstorm | last ,night.

7.5.2.7 (+ to) obligation (5.2.15)
I 'have to ,go -now.

7.5.2.8 (+ past participle)
(perfective aspect) (6.3.7)
They have 'gone a,way.

7.5.2.9 (+ NP + infinitive VP) causative
'Why not have the ,garage -clean your -car?

7.5.2.10 (+ NP + past participle)
(causeative) (5.3.3.7, 6.7.3.6)
I 'have my -shirts -made in -Hong ,Kong.

7.5.3 do

7.5.3.1 perform an action
I 'always -do the -washing,-up.

7.5.3.2 pro-verb (6.8.1.2)
I am sup'posed to ,rest | and I ,do.
('Can I have an ,apple?) 'Please ,do.

7.5.3.3 intensifying (5.1.3)
I 'do -like a -good ,wine!

7.5.3.4 correction (5.1.3)
But I 'did -tell you!
7.5.3.5 negation (5.2.1, 2, 4, etc.)
   'It doesn't rain in the desert.'

7.5.3.6 interrogative (5.1.4)
   'Do you eat cheese?'

7.5.3.7 tag questions
   'You work in an office, don't you?'

7.5.3.8 tag responses (5.2.1, 2)
   'Yes, I do. No, I don't.'

7.5.3.9 in special interrogative
   'Where do you live?'

7.5.3.10 strong imperatives and invitations (5.3.10)
   'Do sit down!

7.6 Uses of modal auxiliaries

7.6.1 can
   7.6.1.1 ability, capacity (5.2.17, 18)
      (6.5.2.10)
      'This actress can sing very well.'

7.6.1.2 requests (5.3.3, 8, 14)
   'Can you do this for me?'

7.6.1.3 offers (5.3.9)
   'Can I help you?'

7.6.1.4 permission (5.2.19, 20, 22)
   'Can I go now?'

7.6.1.5 possibility (5.2.9, 10)
   'It cannot snow in Ghana.'

7.6.1.6 sensory experience (6.5.1.4, 5)
   'I can see some animals.'

7.6.2 could

7.6.2.1 past of can (6.3.13)
   'Mithri dates could speak many languages.'

7.6.2.2 tentative offers
   'Could I be of any help?'

7.6.2.3 tentative requests
   'Could you speak more slowly, please?'

7.6.2.4 suggesting a course of action (5.3.1)
   'We could go to the cinema.

7.6.2.5 suggestions
   'You could always ask a policeman the way.'

7.6.2.6 hypothetical possibility
   'You could easily get lost if you went on foot.'

7.6.3 may

7.6.3.1 possibility (5.2.9, 10)
   'It may rain this afternoon.'

7.6.3.2 asking permission (5.2.19, 20)
   'May I drive the car?
   including also:
   making introductions
   'May I introduce my husband?'
   wants and desires (5.2.23)
   'May I watch television?'
   asking someone for something (5.3.14)
   'May I have a sweet?
   interrupting (5.5.14)
   'May I say something?'

7.6.4 might

7.6.4.1 suggesting a course of action (5.3.1)
   'We might perhaps go to France.'

7.6.5 must

7.6.5.1 logical necessity (5.2.9, 10, 11, 12)
   'He speaks Flemish and French.'
   'He must be Belgian.'

7.6.5.2 physical necessity (5.2.11)
   'We must all die sooner or later.'

7.6.5.3 obligation/compulsion (5.2.15, 16)
   'You must eat everything on your plate.'
7.6.5.4 prohibition (5.2.19)
You 'must ·not ·smoke in ,here.

7.6.5.5 pressing invitations (5.3.10)
You 'must ·come and ,stay with us.

7.6.5.6 emphatic statements (5.5.8)
I 'must ·stress the ·fact that our ·currency is ,weak.

7.6.6 shall

7.6.6.1 future tense (1st person)
I/We shall be in 'London | ·next ,week.

7.6.6.2 making an offer
'Shall I ·cook the ,meal?

7.6.6.3 suggesting a course of action
(5.3.1)
'Shall we ·go to the ,theatre?

7.6.7 should

7.6.7.1 past of shall (6.3.13)
He 'said it should be ,done.

7.6.7.2 advice (5.3.4)
You should be ,careful.

7.6.7.3 duty (6.5.2.3)
You should ·do your ,best.

7.6.7.4 expectation
The 'train should be 'there | by ,now.

7.6.7.5 rightness, wrongness (6.5.2.3)
We should ·help our ·mothers.

7.6.8 will (‘ll)

7.6.8.1 future reference (6.3.11)
The ·sun will ·rise at '6 a.,m. to,morrow.

7.6.8.2 expressing/enquiring about certainty (5.2.9)
It will ·rain | this after,noon.

7.6.8.3 promises (5.2.25)
I will ·pay you ·next ,week.

7.6.8.4 requests (5.3.3)
'Will you ·sit ·down, ·please.

7.6.8.5 asking if an invitation is accepted or not (5.3.13)
'Will you ’visit us, ·after ·all?

7.6.8.6 invitations
'Will you ·come to ,dinner with us?

7.6.8.7 expressing dissatisfaction/dissatisfaction (5.2.35, 36)
'That will ·’not ,do.

7.6.8.8 prediction
To’morrow | will be ‘warm and ,sunny.

7.6.8.9 intentions
I will go to ‘London | ·next ,week.

7.6.8.10 (im)possibility (5.2.9, 10)
The ,car ·won’t ·start.

7.6.8.11 capacity (6.5.2.10)
Our ·car will ·only ·run on ,leaded ·petrol.

7.6.9 would

7.6.9.1 past of will (6.3.13)
The ,car ·wouldn’t ·start.

7.6.9.2 indirect speech ●
He ’thought he would ·go to ‘London | the ·next ,day.

7.6.9.3 enquiring about wants/desires (5.2.24)
'Would you ·like an ·ice,cream?

7.6.9.4 invitations (5.3.10)
'Would you ·like to ·come to ·us for a ,meal?

7.6.9.5 polite requests (5.3.3)
'Would you ·close the ,window, ·please?

7.6.9.6 hypothetical conditions (6.7.6.8)
If you ’asked me, | I would ·come.
7.6.9.7 unreal conditions (6.7.6.8)
If you had ‘asked me, I I would have ‘come.

7.6.9.8 advice (5.3.4)
If ‘I were ·you, I I’d ·go by ‘train.

7.6.9.9 preference (5.2.27, 28)
I’d ‘rather ·drink ‘coffee | than ,tea.

Use of verb forms

7.7 simple present

7.7.1 general statement without time reference (6.3.14)
‘Cats and ,dogs | are ,animals.

7.7.2 permanently ongoing present actions (6.3.12)
My ‘sister ·works in a ,factory.

7.7.3 habitual actions (6.3.17, 22)
I ·go to ‘bed at ’11 p.m. | ‘every ,night.

7.7.4 future reference with adverbs etc. denoting future time (6.3.11)
The ·train ,leaves | ,soon.

7.7.5 present reference with verbs (cf. A 7.2.4.1 above) denoting:
cognitive attitudes (5.2)
I ‘think she is ,French.
volution (5.2.23–27)
He ‘wants to ·go to ,bed.
emotions (5.2.29–44)
I ‘hope the ·plane will ·leave on ‘time.
sensory perception (6.5.1.4–7)
·This ·food tastes ‘good.
reflection (6.6.1)
I ‘know you are ,tired.
anpearance (5.2.13)
He ‘seems to be a ‘sleep.

7.7.6 simple past forms

7.7.6.1 verbs denoting actions completed in a past period (6.3.13)
I ·saw ‘Helen | ,yesterday.

7.7.2.2 reporting statements and questions which contained simple present verb forms (5.6.13)
He ·said ‘dogs and ,cats | were ,animals.
He ‘asked if my ·sister ·worked in a ,factory.

7.7.2.3 for the equivalents of simple present usage (cf. A 7.7.1 above) but relating to a past period (6.3.13):
general statements
‘Formerly, | there were ‘240 ·pence to ,£1.
permanent states
As a ‘child, | I ‘lived in ,London.
habitual actions
‘Last ,year, | I ,drove to ·work every ·day.
stative verbs (cf. A 7.7.1.5 above)
He ‘thought it was ·time to ,go.

7.7.3 present perfect (with reference to the present time)

7.7.3.1 anteriority (6.3.7)
‘Have you seen ,Mary?

7.7.3.2 past reference (6.3.13) i.e. a past action seen as leading to a present condition
It has ‘stopped ,raining.
(implies: It is not now raining.)

7.7.3.3 continuity (6.3.18) i.e. an action or state, beginning in the past, which is still continuing
I have ·known ·Peter for ‘ten ,years, | since I ‘met him in ,Munich.

7.7.4 past perfect (with the same denotations as the present perfect, but with reference to a previous time)
7.7.4.1 anteriority (6.3.7)
He had 'met Mary earlier that day.

7.7.4.2 past reference (6.3.13)
The 'guests had arived.

7.7.4.3 continuity (6.3.18)
In 1980, when he 'died, I had 'known Peter for 'ten years.

7.7.4.4 in indirect speech (5.6.13), reporting past statements and questions containing present perfect forms
He 'asked if she had 'seen Mary lately.
She 'said the 'guests had arived.

7.7.5 present continuous

7.7.5.1 future reference with verbs of motion (6.3.11)
We are 'driving to 'Scotland next week.

7.7.5.2 proximal future (6.3.11)
be + going to + infinitive
He was going to 'sit here 'all day.

7.7.5.3 for present reference i.e. for an action in progress at the time of speaking
Our 'son is 'sitting 'quietly 'watching 'television.

7.7.5.4 continuity (6.3.18)
It is 'still 'raining.

7.7.5.5 temporariness (6.3.21) especially with stative verbs (cf. A 7.7.1.5 above)
I am 'tending to go to France for 'Easter. (implying 'but I may change my mind')

7.7.6 past continuous (used with the same denotations as the present continuous, when the frame of reference is the past (6.3.13))

7.7.6.1 future motion (6.3.11)
He was 'driving to 'Scotland the next day.

7.7.6.2 proximal future reference
be + going to + infinitive
He was going to 'wait a 'long time.

7.7.6.3 action in progress (6.3.18)
She was 'writing a 'letter when the 'telephone 'rang.

7.7.6.5 continuity (6.3.18)
He was 'still 'studying to 'be a 'lawyer

7.7.6.5 temporariness (6.3.21)
The 'students were 'working as 'waiters.

7.7.6.6 in indirect speech (5.6.13), reporting past statements and questions containing present continuous forms
He 'said it was 'still 'raining.

The following uses are for receptive use only by learners at Threshold Level:

7.7.7 present perfect continuous

7.7.7.1 continuity (6.3.18) in a present frame of reference
I have been 'standing here since 'six o'clock.

7.7.8 past perfect continuous

7.7.8.1 continuity (6.3.18) in a past frame of reference
He had been 'learning -French for 'ten 'years and 'spoke it 'well.

7.7.8.2 in indirect speech (6.3.18), reporting statements and questions containing verbs in the past continuous or present perfect continuous
He 'said he had been 'playing 'tennis (reporting either 'I have been playing tennis', or 'I was playing tennis').
7.7.9 passive voice (5.3.7.3)
7.7.9.1 forms (cf. A 7.4.1.3 and A 7.5.1.13 above):
passive with by adjunct
He was 'warned by the police.
agentless passive
My purse has been stolen.
7.7.9.2 role of subject
corresponding to the direct object in an active sentence (6.7.3.2)
The train was delayed by fog.
corresponding to the indirect object in an active sentence (6.7.3.3)
I was given another room when I asked for it.
7.7.9.3 Use
At Threshold Level learners should be able to understand passive sentences, e.g. in instructions (5.3.7). Productive ability will be confined to the use of the agentless passive where the subject of the corresponding active sentence is unknown or irrelevant and particularly with the following verbs:
to be allowed (5.2.19)
'Smoking is not allowed.
permitted (5.2.19)
'Smoking is permitted.
baked, boiled, fried, grilled (7.10.1)
I prefer my fish to be grilled.
included (7.10.2)
'Service is included in the bill.
seen (6.5.1.4), heard (6.5.1.5)
'Children should be seen and not heard.
called (7.1.1)
The pub in our village is called 'The King's Head'.
operated (upon) (7.7.4)
He was operated upon for cancer of the stomach.
trained (7.8.1)
He was trained as an electronic engineer.

A 8 Conjunctions
8.1 Co-ordinating (joining constituents of equal rank. See C 1 and D 1 below.)
8.1.1 conjunctive (6.7.6.1)
8.1.1.1 and
joining non-contrastive constituents of the same rank
She is 'always happy and beautiful and she and I are in love and intend to get married.
expressing sequence of actions
He went to the station and took the train to London.
8.1.1.2 but
joining contrastive constituents
He is intelligent but lazy.
8.1.1.3 as well as
He is intelligent as well as active.
8.1.1.4 ... as + adjective/verb + as ...
He is as strong as a horse.
He works as hard as he can.
8.1.2 disjunctive (6.7.6.2)
8.1.2.1 or (inclusive)
'This play is good for children or older people.
8.1.2.2 or (exclusive)
'Are you married or single?
8.2 Subordinating (cf. C 2 below)
8.2.1 complementising that
I hope that he will come.
8.2.2 temporal (6.3): after (6.3.8), before (6.3.7), since, until (6.3.4), when (6.3.3), while (6.3.10)

He 'left before I arrived.

8.2.3 spatial (6.2): where (6.2.1), preposition + which

The 'town where/in which I live is in Dorset.

8.2.4 manner (6.7.3.9): how, how + adverb

'Teach me -how you -make an omelette. I 'know how -hard you .work.

8.2.5 reason, cause (6.7.6.4, 6): as, because, since

We are . glad | be-cause the sun is .shining.

8.2.6 effect, consequence (6.7.6.5)

so (+ adj + that)

It was 'so ,hot | that I 'took off my ,coat. or It was ,hot, | so I 'took off my ,coat.

8.2.7 conditional (6.7.6.8)

If it 'doesn't ,rain, | we'll -go fishing.

8.2.8 relative (6.8.1.1, 2): what, who, whom, that, which, whose

'What you -say ,interests me. I ,know | -who you ,mean.

B Phrase level

B 1 Noun phrase (NP)

1.1 Form

1.1.1 a pronoun

She ,loves him.

1.1.2 a noun without determiner

1.1.2.1 proper nouns

'Juan ·lives in Spain.

1.1.2.2 plural indefinites (cf. A 1.2 above)

'People are ,strange.

1.1.2.3 unspecified singular nouns denoting:

colour (6.5.1.9)

'red, .white and ,blue

material (6.5.1.14)

I pre-f'fer 'leather·shoes.

days, months (6.3.2, 6.3.3)

To-morrow is 'Tuesday the -fourth of 'April.

drinks (7.10.1)

'Beer tastes ,bitter.

foodstuffs (7.10.1)

'I don't 'eat ,meat.

meals (7.3.1, 7.10.1)

'What is for lunch to-day?

festivals (6.3.3)

'Easter is ,early | this ,year.

numerals (6.4.1)

'Three and ,eight | make e,leven.

abstracts (7.8)

Edu'cation is im,portant.

arts, sports, games (7.4.2)

I pre-f'fer 'music | or 'chess | to ,football.

vehicles seen as means of transport (7.5.1)

I 'go to ,London | by 'car or by ,train.

1.1.13 determiner + noun (cf. A 3 above)

'Put a ·stamp on ·this ·envelope.

1.1.4 pre-determiner (cf. A 3.9 above) + determiner + noun

'Did she ·eat ·all the ,cakes?

1.1.5 (pre-determiner) + determiner + post determiner (cf. A 3.10 above) + noun

Is 'this your ·first ,visit to ·Britain?

1.1.6 (pre-determiner +) (determiner +) (post-determiner +) adjective(s) + noun

She was ·wearing a 'nice ,new ·white ,dress.
1.1.7 (determiner +) adverb of degree (6.4.3) + adjective + noun
‘Chess is a very different game.

1.1.8 (determiner +) qualifying adverb + adjective + noun
He is a happily married man.

1.1.9 (determiner +) (adverb +) (adjective +) noun + relative adjunct:
1.1.9.1 adverb
‘Do you know the way back?

1.1.9.2 prepositional phrase
The chair in the bedroom is broken.

1.1.9.3 to + infinitive verb phrase (VPinf)
I need a clean shirt to wear.

1.1.10 (determiner +) (adverb +) (adjective +) noun + relative clause
Jane, I’d like you to meet a very nice young man I know.

1.1.11 NP denoting container (6.4.2) or measure (6.2.8.2, 4, 5, 6.4.2) + of + NP denoting mass substances, materials or plurals
I’d like a pound of apples and a large bottle of dry white wine.

1.2 Use of noun phrases
1.2.1 as subject (6.7.3.1, 2, 3)
The young woman ran away.

1.2.2 as direct object of transitive verb (6.7.3.2)
We won the football match.

1.2.3 as indirect object of verb of giving (6.7.3.3)
I gave my sister a CD player.

1.2.4 in prepositional phrases
We went to a fine old house.

1.3 Use
At Threshold Level, learners should be able to understand all the types of noun phrase shown above. They may be expected to produce them, however, only in fixed combinations they have met, or else in relatively simple form, with not more than, say, two qualifying elements in addition to the basic determiner + noun.

B 2 Adjective phrases
2.1 Forms (in addition to those in 1.1.7 and 1.1.8 above)
2.1.1 predicative adjective + post-modifier
This food is not good enough.

2.1.2 predicative adjective + adjunct
‘Smoking is bad for you.

2.1.3 predicative complementising adjective + complement phrase or clause (cf. C 2.1.1.1 below)
‘Apples are good to eat. It is probable that he will come.

2.2 Use
At Threshold Level, learners should be able to recognise the types of adjectival phrase shown and to produce them in simple form.

B 3 Pronoun phrase
3.1 Forms
3.1.1 determiner + adjective + one(s) (6.8.1.2)
‘Give me the largest one(s).
3.1.2 some + of + determiner + mass noun/plural noun
I'd like some of the butter, please.

3.1.3 indefinite pronoun (6.8.2) +
adjunct
'May I have something to drink?

3.1.4 indefinite pronoun +
adjective
He told me 'nothing -new or -interesting.

3.1.5 indefinite pronoun + relative clause
'Susan is someone I met in Spain.

3.2 Use
At Threshold Level, learners should be able to understand the above types of pronominal phrase and to produce them in simple form.

B 4 Verb phrase (VP)

4.1 Forms containing one main verb

4.1.1 intransitive verb (6.2.4)
The train ar-rived.

4.1.2 copula + NP complement (5.1.1)
'This animal is a dog.

4.1.3 transitive verb + NP direct object (6.7.3.2)
I saw a bird.

4.1.4 transitive verb + NP direct object (6.7.3.2) + NP indirect object (6.7.3.3)
I showed the letter to his mother.
(+ benefactive 6.7.3.5)
I gave John the letter for Marion.

(+ instrumental 6.7.3.4)
Susan 'opened the door for me with her key.

4.1.5 adverb + verb
'He and I 'always a,gree.

4.1.6 verb + adverb(s)
He 'walked again 'very slowly -afterwards.

4.1.7 copula + adjectival phrase
She is 'very i,n,telligent.

4.1.8 copula + adverb
The 'fork is 'here.

4.1.9 copula + prepositional phrase
The 'cup is on the 'table.

4.1.10 stative verb + complement NP
She seems a 'nice girl.

4.1.11 stative verb + adjectival phrase
The fish tastes 'very nice.

4.1.12 verb + prepositional or adverbial particle (phrasal verb)
The dog is -lying down.

4.1.13 verb + adverbial (prepositional) adjunct
Our guests -sleep in this bedroom.

4.2 Short answers (5.1.5, 5.2.1)

4.2.1 be
('Are you French?) Yes, I am.

4.3.2 have
('Has he finished?) Yes, he has.

4.2.3 modals
('Can I go now?) Yes, you can.

4.2.4 do
('Do they like mutton?) No, they don't.
4.3 Pro-verb phrase do so
He 'asked me to ,stop | and I ,did so.

4.4 Nominalised verb phrases (VPs)

4.4.1 to + VP infinitive
I 'want to ·go ,home.

4.4.2 wh + to + VP infinitive
I ·don't ·know 'what to ,do.

4.4.3 VP gerund
I 'like ·swimming in the ,sea.

4.5 Use of nominalised verb phrases

4.5.1 to + infinitive
4.5.1.1 as subject •
To 'kill ·people | is ,wrong.
4.5.1.2 following complementising adjectives (cf. A 4.5 above) of probability (5.2.9, 10)
It is 'likely to ,rain to-morrow.
of certainty (5.2.13, 14)
He is eX'pected to ar·rive ,late.
of evaluation (6.5.2)
It is 'wrong to ,kill ·people.
denoting emotional states (5.2.29–50)
I am 'glad to ,see you.
denoting physical qualities (6.5.1)
This ·bed is ,soft to ·lie on.
denoting moral qualities (5.2.49)
It is 'kind of you | to in,vite us.
denoting order (6.3.9)
They are 'always the ,last to ar·rive.
denoting availability (6.1.3)
'IIs the ·food ·ready to ,eat?
4.5.1.3 with adjectives and adverbs of degree (6.4.3)
ough
The 'tea is ·now ·cool e·nough to ,drink. 'Have you had e·nough to ,eat?

4.5.2 wh + to + VP infinitive
4.5.2.1 following certain complementising adjectives certain (5.2.13)
'Are you ·certain ·where to ,go?

4.5.2.2 following certain complementising verbs denoting cognitive attitudes (5.2) tell, teach
'Do you ·know -where to ,go?
'Teach me ·how to ,swim.

4.5.3 VP gerund
4.5.3.1 as subject
'Swimming in the ,sea | 'can be ·dangerous.

too
My ·grandfather is 'too ,old | to ,travel.
very
This ·case is 'very ,heavy to ·carry.

4.5.1.4 following certain complementising verbs (cf. A 7.1.7 above)
forget, remember
'Did you re·member to ·close the ,window?
verbs of volition (5.2.23–27)
I 'want to be·come a ,doctor.
verbs expressing emotions (5.2.29–46)
I 'hope to ,pass the exami·nation.
commencement (6.3.24)
It is be'ginning to ,rain.
suasion (6.6.2)
'Tell him to ·come ,here.
appearance (5.2.13)
She 'seems to be a, sleep.
4.5.3.2 following certain complementising verbs

forget, remember (5.2.7, 8)
I’ll ‘never forget ·meeting the ·Prime ,Minister.
like, intend, prefer (5.2.23–28)
She pre-fers ,driving | to ·going by ,train.

4.5.3.3 in prepositional phrases

I ‘don’t be,lieve | in ·punishing ·little ,children.
‘Don’t ·leave | without ‘paying the ,bill.

147

4.6 Use

Learners at Threshold Level should be able to understand the verb phrases listed above and to use them productively as exponents of the functional and notional categories set out in Chapters 5, 6 and 7. It will be seen that since the verb phrase comprises everything in the sentence apart from the subject NP it is capable of very great complexity. The ability of learners at Threshold Level to process complex syntactic structures receptively is limited and their ability to produce them very much more so. Whilst it is not possible to list in extenso the combinations a learner at Threshold Level will be able to understand or produce beyond the relatively fixed collocations which are the direct exponents of particular functions, it is recommended that meaningful content should be spread over a number of relatively simple sentences, or, in the case of conversation, a number of relatively simple contributions from the partners in turn, rather than organised into longer and more complex sentences.

B 5 Adverbial phrase

5.1 adverb of degree and gradable adverb
He ·drove ‘very ,fast.

5.2 comparative of equality/inequality
He ·did as ‘well as he ·could.

5.3 prepositional phrase(s)
We ’drove to the ,seaside | by ,car.

B 6 Preposition phrase

(Note We mean by this a phrase fulfilling the function of a preposition, not an adverbial consisting of a preposition + a noun phrase, often termed a prepositional phrase.)

6.1 Preposition + NP + of

6.1.1 in front of (6.2.2)
The 'bus ·stop is in ·front of the ,bank.

6.1.2 in the centre of (6.2.2)
The ca.thedral is in the ·centre of the ,city.

6.1.3 at the back of (7.4.4)
The 'plates are at the ·back of the ,cupboard.
APPENDIX B

6.1.4 at/to the side of (6.2.2)
'Put the ,knife | to the 'side of the ,plate.

6.1.5 at the end of (6.2.2)
Their ·house is at the 'end of the ,road.

6.1.6 to the left/right of (6.2.5)
The 'fridge is to the ·right of the ,washing-ma·chine.

6.1.7 in the neighbourhood of (6.2.3)
'Sonning is in the ·neighbourhood of ,Reading.

6.2 Adverb and preposition

6.2.1 next to (6.2.2)
We 'live ·next to an ,actor.

6.2.2 far (away) from (6.2.3)
The ·house is ·not ·far from the shops.

6.2.3 out of (6.2.6)
An ·animal came ·out of the ,forest.

C Clause level

C 1 Clause types and functions

1.1 Main clause (NP and finite VP)

1.1.1 as sole constituent of a simple sentence (See D 1.1 below.)
I will 'come ·home ,soon.

1.1.2 as co-ordinate constituent of a compound sentence
My work is 'nearly ·finished | and I will 'come ·home | ,soon.

1.1.3 as main clause in a complex sentence
I will 'come ·home | when my ·work is ·finished.

1.2 Subordinate clause

1.2.1 as short answer to a wh-question
('When are you ·coming ·home?)
'We are ·coming ·home.

1.2.2 as part of a complex sentence
I 'left when my ·work was ·finished.

C 2 Forms and functions of subordinate clauses

2.1 Noun clauses

2.1.1 (that) + NP + VP finite

2.1.1.1 following it + be + adjective of probability (5.2.9, 10)
It is ·likely that it will ·snow | to,night.

2.1.1.2 following it + be + certain complementising verbs
certainty (5.2.13, 14)
It is expected that the ·teachers will ·strike.

2.1.1.3 following it + be + certain noun phrases
It is a ·pity | that she is ·not ·here.

2.1.1.4 following certain complementising adjectives
(cf. A 4.5 above)
certainty (5.2.13, 14)
I am ·sure (that) he will ·come.

2.1.1.5 expressing surprise (5.2.41)
I am sur'prised | that he has ·left al-ready.

2.1.2 following it + + certain complementising verbs
matter (5.2.39)
It ·doesn't ·matter | that she is ·not ·here.

surprise (5.2.41)
It sur'prises me | that he has ·left al-ready.

2.1.3 following it + be + certain noun phrases
It is a ·pity | (that) they cannot ·come.

2.1.4 following certain complementising adjectives
(cf. A 4.5 above)
certainty (5.2.13, 14)
I am ·sure (that) he will ·come.

denoting emotional states
(5.2.29–50)
I am ·sorry | (that) she is ·ill.

expressing surprise (5.2.41)
I am sur'prised | (that) he ·loves ·her.
2.1.5 following certain complementising verbs
cf. A 7.1.7 above)
reporting (5.1.2)
He said that the food was very good.
knowing (5.2.5, 6)
I know (that) she works in an office.
remembering (5.2.7, 8)
I remember (that) he is very tall.
expressing certainty (5.2.13, 14)
Do you think (that) it will be foggy?
expressing hope (5.2.44)
I do hope (that) you will come to dinner.

2.1.2 if + NP + VP finite
2.1.2.1 in indirect questions,
following verbs of:
asking
She asked if he was ready yet.
wondering
I wonder if you could help me.
knowing
I don't know if you will like this.

2.1.3 wh clause (wh + NP + VP)
2.1.3.1 as subject
'What I like is watching football.
2.1.3.2 as complement after be
This is 'not what I expected' or 'wanted.

2.1.3.3 in indirect questions,
following verbs of:
asking
I asked him where he was going.
wondering
I wonder where my keys are.
telling
I told him when the train was leaving.

2.1.4 what + VP
2.1.4.1 as subject
'What interests me is politics.
2.1.4.2 as object
I know what is meant.

2.1.5 NP + VP infinitive
2.1.5.1 following verbs of sensory perception
I saw him drive away.

2.1.6 NP + to + VP infinitive
2.1.6.1 following verbs of volition
(5.2.23–27)
I want my son to become a doctor.
liking (5.2.32–34)
I do not like my children to smoke.
suasion (6.6.2)
'Tell that man not to smoke in here.
cognition (5.2.5–8)
I know him to be a kind man.

2.1.7 NP + VP gerund
2.1.7.1 following verbs of remembering (5.2.7, 8)
I remember my brother being born.
liking and disliking (5.2.23–28)
I hate insects eating my vegetables.

2.1.8 NP (+ to be) + adjective
I prefer water to be boiled.
2.1.9 pro-clause so

2.1.9.1 following certain complementising verbs of reflection (6.6.1)
('Will he, come?) I 'hope/think/be Iieve so.
of expression (6.6.2)
('Is she, really Irench?) She Iays so.

2.2 Adjectival (relative) clauses

2.2.1 following NP human

2.2.1.1 who + VP
'This is the -man who Iives with me.

2.2.1.2 that + VP
'This is the -woman that defeated me at chess.

2.2.1.3 whom + NP + VP
'A Alison is the -girl whom I met in Turkey.

2.2.1.4 (that) + NP + VP
'She is the -actress (that) I like best.

2.2.1.5 preposition + whom + NP + VP
'Mrs. Smith is a -ady with whom I work.

2.2.1.6 (who/that) + NP + VP
'Joe's a -an (who/that) I play rugby with.

2.2.1.7 (possessive) whose + NP + VP
'The -man whose -daughter taught me French has just died.

2.2.1.8 whose + NP + NP + VP
'This is a -olleague whose -wife I trained as a nurse.

2.2 following NP non-human

2.2.2.1 which/that + VP
'I read a -ook which/that explains nuclear physics.

2.2.2.2 which/that + NP + VP
'Have you seen the -ar which/that I bought?

2.2.3 following superlative

2.2.3.1 (that) NP + VP
Is 'that the -best (that) you can do?

2.2.4 restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses

2.2.4.1 restrictive
'I do not buy books which are boring. (i.e. I only buy interesting books.)

2.2.4.2 non-restrictive
'I do not buy books which are boring. (i.e. I do not buy any books, because all books are boring.)

2.3 Adverbial clauses

2.3.1 of place (6.2)

2.3.1.1 where ... (6.2.2)
'It hurts where I put my finger.

2.3.2 of time (6.3), denoting

2.3.2.1 point of time (6.3.3, 6.3.10)
when
'Please come when I call you.

2.3.2.2 duration (past) (6.3.4) since
'It is quiet here since Ian left.

2.3.2.3 duration (future) (6.3.4, 6.3.25) until/till
I will ('not) sleep until/till he re,turns.

2.3.2.4 anteriority (6.3.8) before
The accident happened before l arived.

2.3.2.5 posteriority (6.3.8) after
'After we finished eating, we paid the bill.

2.3.2.6 simultaneity (at point in time) (6.3.10) as soon as
'Tell me as soon as the boat sails.
2.3.2.7 simultaneity (duration) (6.3.10) while
There will be a 'short de,lay | while we 'check the ,plane.

2.3.3 expressing logical relations (6.7)

2.3.3.1 reason, cause (6.7.6.4) because
I -eat ,brown -bread | be-cause it is ,good for me.

2.3.3.2 cause (6.7.6.4) as ●
 'As he was ,tired, | he 'lost the ,match.

2.3.3.3 reason (6.7.6.6) since ●
 'Since you are ,sorry, | I 'll for, give you.

2.3.3.4 effect (6.7.6.5) so
He 'turned ,right, | so he 'lost his ,way.

2.3.3.5 effect (6.7.6.5) so ... (that)
The ·suitcase was 'so ,heavy | (that) I 'couldn’t ,carry it.

2.3.3.6 condition (6.7.6.8) if
(See also 5.2.20, 39, 57.)
'If you ,like, | you can -come | too.

2.3.3.7 comparison (6.7.4.2) than
The ·tea is 'stronger than I had ex,pected.

D Sentence level

D 1 Form

1.1 Simple sentences, consisting of one main clause (cf. C 1.1.1 above)

1.2 Compound sentences, consisting of two or more main clauses, linked by co-ordinating conjunctions (cf. A 8.1 above)

1.3 Complex sentences, consisting of a main clause + one or more subordinate clauses (cf. C 1.2 above)

D 2 Sentence types

2.1 Declarative

2.1.1 affirmative
The 'tourists ·ate their ·sandwiches.

2.1.1.1 emphatic affirmative (5.1.3)
NP + do + VP infinitive
I 'did -tell you.

2.1.2 negative

2.1.2.1 NP + be/have + not/n't + ...
It 'isn’t -cold in 'Africa.

2.1.2.2 NP + do/modal + n't + VP infinitive
It 'doesn’t -rain in the Sa-hara 'desert.
He 'can’t speak 'French.

2.1.2.3 with negative indefinite pronouns, adverbs, etc. (6.8.2)
'Nobody ,likes me.
'Old ,soldiers | 'never ,die.
2.1.2.4 use of negative expression +
indefinite pronoun, adverb,
etc.
He 'won't ·eat ,anything.
'Nobody is ·safe ,anywhere.

2.2 Interrogative
2.2.1 decision (yes/no) questions
2.2.1.1 be/have (+ not) + NP + ...
'Are you ,ready?
'Haven't you ·been to ,Italy?

2.2.1.2 do/modal (+ not) + NP +
infinite
'Don't you ·eat ,meat?
'Can I ,help you?

2.2.1.3 declarative sentence with
high-rising intonation
You're 'ready?

2.2.1.4 affirmative sentence +
negative tag question with
falling intonation conducive
to the answer 'yes'
You 'are ,coming, | ,aren't you?
with low-rising intonation
non-conducive
You are ,German, | ,aren't you?

2.2.1.5 negative sentence + positive
tag with falling intonation conducive
to the answer 'no'
You 'don't a,gree with her, | ,do you?
with low-rising intonation,
non-conducive
Jane 'hasn't ,left yet, | ,has she?

2.2.2 special questions (wh)
requiring an answer
consisting in or containing:
2.2.2.1 a subject NP (human)
Who + VP finite
'Who has ·drunk my ,tea?
(‘Sorry, 'I ·have.)

2.2.2.2 a subject NP (non-human)
What + VP finite
'What ·interests you ,most?
(,Politics.)

2.2.2.3 specification of a subject NP
Which + NP + VP finite
'Which ·driver ·owns this ,car?
(,Me.)

2.2.2.4 an object NP (human)
Who/Whom ◦ + auxiliary + NP
+ VP non-finite, containing a
transitive verb
'Who did you ,see ·last ·night?
'Whom did you ,see ·last ·night?

2.2.2.5 an object NP (non-human)
What + auxiliary + NP + VP
non-finite containing a
transitive verb
'What do you ·want for ,breakfast?

2.2.2.6 a specified object NP
Which + NP + auxiliary + NP +
VP non-finite, containing a
transitive verb
'Which ·food do you ·like ,best?

2.2.2.7 an adverbial of time
When + interrogative
sentence structure
'When does the ·train ,leave?

2.2.2.8 an adverbial of place
Where + interrogative
sentence structure
'Where did you ·go ,afterwards?

2.2.2.9 an adverbial of manner
How + interrogative sentence
structure
'How can I ·pay the ,bill?

2.2.2.10 an adverbial of reason
(or relative declarative
sentence)
Why + auxiliary +
interrogative sentence
'Why do you ·go to ,church?
(Be·cause I be'lieve in ,God.)
Why are you a·fraid of the
'po,lice?
(I 'don't 'know, | but ...)
2.3 Imperative
2.3.1 VP infinitive
'Go to bed at once.
2.3.2 you + VP infinitive
'John, | 'you be a 'good ,boy | and 'eat your ,spinach!
2.3.3 do + VP infinitive
'Do ·please ·sit ·down!
2.3.4 let's + VP infinitive
'Let's ·go to the ,theatre!

3.1 Affirmative sentences
3.1.1 reporting (5.1.2)
3.1.1.1 narrating an event (5.1.2)
The ·flight ar·rived at '9 a.,m.
3.1.1.2 describing (5.1.2)
'Sue I has 'blue ,eyes.
3.1.2 answering questions (5.1.5)
'It ·happened 'early this ,morning.
3.1.3 making statements
concerning:
3.1.3.1 agreement (5.2.1)
'I 'quite a,gree with you.
3.1.3.2 knowledge (5.2.5)
'I 'know he was ·here ,yesterday.
3.1.3.3 memory (5.2.7)
'I re'member ,meeting you | in '198,5.
3.1.3.4 probability (5.2.9)
'I am 'likely to ·see him in
',London.
3.1.3.5 logical necessity (5.2.11)
'Casa vVecchia | 'must be in
'Italy.
3.1.3.6 certainty (5.2.13)
'I am 'sure he will ,come.
3.1.3.7 obligation (5.2.15)
'You 'must ·stay here ·till I
re,turn.
3.1.3.8 ability (5.2.17)
'All ·young ,Swedes | can 'speak
,English.
3.1.3.9 permissibility (5.2.19)
'Parking is al,lowed | from
'6 ·p.,m. | to '8 ·a.,m.
3.1.4 expressing:
3.1.4.1 wants and desires (5.2.23)
'I 'want to ·see my ,friend.
3.1.4.2 intentions (5.2.25)
'I am 'going to ·buy a ·new ,car.
3.1.4.3 preference (5.2.27)
'I'd 'rather 'die | than ·give ·up
,tennis.
3.1.4.4 pleasure, happiness (5.2.29)
'I'm de'lighted to ,see you a-gain.
3.1.4.5 displeasure, unhappiness
(5.2.30)
'I'm ·feeling 'very ,miserable this
,morning.
3.1.4.6 liking (5.2.32)
'I 'like ·cakes and ,pastries | 'very
,much.
3.1.4.7 dislike (5.2.33)
'This 'coffee | ·tastes 'horrible.
3.1.4.8 satisfaction (5.2.35)
'This ·brandy is 'just what I ,need.
3.1.4.9 dissatisfaction (5.2.36)
'The 'shower in the ,bathroom | is
'not ,working.
3.1.4.10 interest (5.2.38)
'I am 'very ·interested in ·old
,buildings.
3.1.4.11 lack of interest (5.2.39)
'I ·don't ·care if it ·rains 'all ,day.
3.1.4.12 surprise (5.2.41)
'I'm sur'prised | he ·didn't
,phone.
3.1.4.13 hope (5.2.44)
I ‘hope to become an actress.

3.1.4.14 fear (5.2.46)
I’m afraid of the dark.

3.1.4.15 gratitude (5.2.49)
I’m grateful to you for helping me.

3.1.4.16 moral obligation (5.2.53)
You should be kind to animals.

3.1.4.17 regret (5.2.57)
I’m sorry that I broke your window.

3.1.4.18 sympathy (5.2.57)
I’m so sorry to hear your wife is ill.

3.1.5 giving:
3.1.5.1 suggestions (5.3.1)
We might perhaps go to Turkey this year.

3.1.5.2 advice (5.3.4)
You ought to see a doctor.

3.1.5.3 warning (5.3.5)
This plate is very hot.

3.1.5.4 instructions (5.3.7)
You cut the paper like this.

3.1.5.5 directions (5.3.7)
The party will meet outside the hotel at 5.30 a.m.

3.1.6 structuring discourse by
3.1.6.1 introducing a theme (5.5.4)
I’d like to say something about world poverty.

3.1.6.2 expressing an opinion (5.5.5)
In my opinion, nuclear weapons are useless.

3.1.6.3 giving emphasis (5.5.8)
I must stress the fact that we are friends.

3.1.6.4 repeating what one has said (5.6.13)
I said that I wanted a drink, please.

3.2 Emphatic affirmative sentences
3.2.1 correcting a negative statement (5.1.3)
But I did see him!

3.2.2 expressing certainty (5.2.13)
I’m sure he does eat cheese.

3.2.3 expressing strong positive feelings
I do like ice-cream!

3.3 Negative sentences
3.3.1 correcting a positive statement (5.1.3)
‘No, I didn’t see her.

3.3.2 denying statements (5.2.4)
But I know nothing about it.

3.3.3 denying knowledge, belief, etc. (5.2.5, 13, etc.)
I don’t think so.

3.3.4 expressing negative feelings and attitudes (5.2.30, 33, 36, etc.)
I don’t like hot milk.

3.3.5 withholding permission (5.2.19, 22)
You cannot go out tonight.

3.4 Decision questions
3.4.1 asking for confirmation (5.1.4)
You won, didn’t you?

3.4.2 enquiring about:
3.4.2.1 agreement (5.2.3)
‘Don’t you think that’s dangerous?

3.4.2.2 knowledge (5.2.6)
‘Do you know my cousin?
3.4.2.3 memory (5.2.8)  
'Do you re·member the war?

3.4.2.4 probability (5.2.10)  
'Are you likely to vote Labour?

3.4.2.5 necessity (5.2.12)  
'Must you leave al·ready?

3.4.2.6 certainty (5.2.14)  
'Are you sure it has stopped raining? 'Do you really think so?

3.4.2.7 ability (5.2.18)  
'Are you able to see?

3.4.2.8 permissibility (5.2.20)  
'Is it all right if I open the window?

3.4.3 enquiring about:  

3.4.3.1 wants, desires (5.2.24)  
'Would you like to dance?

3.4.3.2 intentions (5.2.26)  
'Are you thinking of getting up?

3.4.3.3 preferences (5.2.28)  
'Do you prefer orange juice to beer?

3.4.3.4 feelings (5.2.31, 34, 37, 40, 43, 48, 56)  
'Do you like my new hat?

3.4.4 making requests (5.3.3)  
'Could you open the window, please?

3.4.5 asking for help (5.3.8)  
'Can you help me, please?

3.4.6 offering assistance (5.3.9)  
'Can I help you?

3.5 Special (wh) questions  

3.5.1 asking for specific information (5.1.3)  
'How far is it to the station?

3.5.2. asking about wants and desires (5.2.24)  
'Where would you like to go?

3.5.3 asking for preferences (5.2.8)  
'Which do you prefer, coffee or tea?

3.5.4 enquiring about well-being (5.2.31)  
'How are you feeling?

3.5.5 enquiring about satisfaction (5.2.37) approval (5.2.56)  
'How do you find our food?

3.5.6 giving advice (5.3.4)  
'Why don't you go to bed?

3.6 Imperative sentences  

3.6.1 asking for information (5.1.4)  
'Tell me what happened.

3.6.2 giving reassurance (5.2.47)  
'Don't be afraid.

3.6.3 apologising (5.2.51)  
'Please forgive me for hurting you.

3.6.4 making suggestions (5.3.1)  
'Let's go out for a meal.

3.6.5 making requests (5.3.3)  
'Please make less noise!

3.6.6 giving warnings (5.3.5)  
'Don't forget your passport!

3.6.7 offering assistance (5.3.9)  
'Let me help you.

3.6.8 giving encouragement (5.3.6)  
'Go on, ring him up!

3.6.9 giving instructions or directions (5.3.7)  
'Put a little salt and pepper on the omelette.
D4 Use

At Threshold Level, learners should be able to understand and produce simple sentences within the limits of the Threshold Level specification, given that noun and verb phrases are not overloaded (cf. D 1.3 and B 4.6 above). Within the same limits they should be able to understand and produce compound sentences. They can be expected to produce complex sentences which are straightforward in character, e.g. limited to one subordinate clause of fairly simple structure with a main clause frame of a basic character, as for instance in the examples in this summary. Learners should be able to understand complex sentences containing more than one embedded clause, given that the internal structure of clauses and the relations between them are uncomplicated. It is difficult to define exact limits. Any learner who has attained Threshold Level competence should have little difficulty with such sentences as

- He said he 'wanted to leave.
- 'When I left, | I 'saw that it was raining.

or even:
- We 'thought you were ill | because you 'said you had a headache.

An experienced and literate reader will perhaps be able to handle textual material of greater complexity and most learners will be able to achieve gist and single point comprehension in dealing with such texts. Listening comprehension is more demanding and the chain of understanding may be broken if the speech presented under conditions where repair strategies cannot be used is too complicated or too dense. In writing, simplicity is generally a virtue. In conversation, learners should be able to understand the interlocutor's contributions where they are short and within the limits of this specification. Where that is not the case, they should be able to operate repair strategies, using the expressions given in 5.6 (see also Chapter 12). Their own contributions may be expected to be relatively short, with short answers consisting of single phrases and clauses, simple sentences or the simplest of complex sentences. These simple means should, however, be sufficient to ensure communication at a basic level.
Appendix C  Word index

A  [ei]

a(n) art: 6.8.2
able prep: 6.2.2
about prep: 5.3.1.4, 5.3.10.2, 5.5.4.1, 6.4.1, 6.7.6.9
above prep: 6.2.2
abroad adj: 7.5.4
accept vb: 6.5.2.4
accident n: 7.7.4
account n: 7.11.4
ache n: 7.7.4
acquaintance n: 7.6.1
across prep: 6.2.5
active adj: 7.1.14
actor n: 7.4.4
actress n: 7.4.4
addict n: 7.6.6
address n: 7.1.2
adult n and adj: 6.5.1.10, 7.5.1, 7.8.1
advertisement n: 7.4.8
aeroplane n: 7.5.1
affair n: 7.4.3
afraid adj: 5.2.22.3, 5.2.46.3, 5.2.47.2, 5.2.48.1, 5.3.12.5
Africa n: 7.5.4
after prep: 5.5.16.1, 6.2.7, 6.3.3, 6.3.8, 6.3.11
afternoon n: 5.4.2.2, 5.4.12.1.1, 6.3.2, 6.3.11, 6.3.1.2, 7.4.4
afterwards adv: 6.3.8, 6.3.9
again adv: 5.5.3.5, 5.6.2.3, 6.3.22
against prep: 6.2.2, 6.5.2.4, 7.4.7
age n: 6.5.1.10
ago adv: 6.3.3
agree vb: 5.2.1.1, 5.2.2.1, 5.2.3.2
ahem! int: 5.5.1.3.2
air n: 7.5.1, 7.6.7
air force n: 7.6.7
airline n: 7.5.1
airmail n: 7.6.3
airport n: 7.5.1
alcohol n: 7.6.6
alive adj: 6.5.1.11, 7.7.4
all adj and pron: 6.4.2
all right adv: 5.2.20.3, 5.2.21.4, 5.2.21.5, 5.2.35.2, 5.2.37.3, 5.2.47.4, 5.2.52.2, 5.2.52.3, 5.2.56.2, 5.3.2.4, 6.5.1.11, 6.5.2.4, 6.5.2.5
allow vb: 5.2.19.1, 5.2.22.5
allowed adj: 5.2.19.1, 5.2.22.5
allowance n: 7.3.3
ally n: 7.6.7
almost adv: 6.4.3
along prep and adv: 6.2.4, 6.2.5
already adv: 6.3.7
also adv: 6.7.6.1, 6.7.6.3
always adv: 6.3.17, 6.3.19, 6.3.20, 6.3.21, 6.8.2
a.m. adv: 6.3.1
ambassador n: 7.11.6
ambulance n: 7.7.5
America n: 7.5.4
among prep: 6.2.2, 6.2.7
and conj: 5.5.6.3, 6.7.6.1
animal n: 7.2.8
another adj: 5.5.6.4, 6.4.1, 6.7.4.1
answer n and vb: 6.6.2
antique n and adj: 7.4.5
any adj and pron: 6.4.2
anybody pron: 5.2.4.3, 6.8.2
anyone pron: 6.8.2
anything pron: 5.2.4.3, 6.8.2
anywhere adv: 6.2.1, 6.8.2
apartment n: 7.2.1
apologise vb: 5.2.51.5, 5.2.51.6, 6.6.2
apple n: 7.10.1
apply vb: 7.3.5
appointment n: 7.6.2, 7.7.5
approve vb: 5.2.56.3
area n: 7.2.7
arithmetic n: 7.8.2
arm n: 7.7.1
army n: 7.6.7
arrest vb: 7.6.6
arrival n: 7.5.1
arrive vb: 6.2.4
art n: 7.4.5
article n: 7.4.8
as prep: 6.7.3.9
as ... as conj: 6.7.4.2
as well as conj: 6.7.6.1
ashtray n: 7.9.4
Asia n: 7.5.4
ask vb: 5.5.11.1, 6.6.2
at prep: 6.2.2, 6.3.3
at all adv: 5.2.13.3.2, 5.2.33, 5.2.39, 5.2.50.2, 5.2.52.5
Athens n: 7.1.2
at least adv: 6.4.2
attack n and vb: 7.6.7
attention n: 5.5.20.1
aunt n: 7.1.11
Australia n: 7.5.4
autumn n: 6.3.2
away adv: 6.1.2, 6.2.3, 6.2.5

B [bi:]

baby n: 6.5.1.10, 7.5.1.11
back n: 7.4.4, 7.7.1
back adv: 5.5.26, 6.2.5
bad adv: 6.5.1.6, 6.5.1.7, 6.5.2.2, 7.1.14
badly adv: 6.7.3.9
bag n: 7.5.6
baggage n: 7.5.1, 7.5.6
bake vb: 7.10.1
baker n: 7.1.10, 7.9.1
balcony n: 7.5.5
bald adj: 7.1.15
ball n: 7.4.7
ballet n: 7.4.4
ball-pen n: 7.6.3
ball-point adj: 7.6.3
banana n: 7.10.1
bandage n: 7.7.4
bank n: 7.11.4
bank-note n: 7.9.6
bar n: 7.5.1, 7.10.2
baseball n: 7.4.7
basement n: 7.2.2
Basle n: 7.1.2
bath n: 7.2.6, 7.3.1
bathroom n: 7.2.2
battle n: 7.6.7
be vb: 5.1.1.3, 5.1.1.4, 6.1.1.3, 6.2.1, 6.5.2.1, 7.2.4
be from vb: 7.1.9
beach n: 7.2.7
beans n: 7.10.1
beautiful adj: 7.1.15
because conj: 5.1.5.2.5, 6.7.6.4, 6.7.6.6
become vb: 6.1.1, 6.3.27, 7.3.5
bed n: 7.2.3, 7.3.1, 7.5.5
bedroom n: 7.2.2
beef n: 7.10.1
beer n: 7.10.1
before prep: 6.2.2, 6.2.7, 6.3.3, 6.3.7, 6.3.13
beg vb: 5.2.51.7, 5.6.2.1
begin vb: 6.3.24
behind prep: 6.2.2
believe vb: 5.2.1.6.4, 5.2.1.7.5, 5.2.13.2.4, 5.2.14.2, 6.6.1, 7.1.12
belong vb: 6.7.5.1.
below prep: 6.2.2
belt n: 7.5.3
benefit n: 7.3.2
beside prep: 6.2.2
best adj: 5.5.28.1.2, 6.5.2.2
better adj: 5.2.35.5.1, 5.4.4.3.1, 6.5.1.11, 6.5.2.2, 6.5.2.7
between prep: 6.2.2, 6.2.7
bicycle n: 7.5.2
big adj: 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.6
bike n: 7.5.2
bill n: 7.5.5, 7.10.2
biography n: 7.4.6
bird n: 7.2.8
biro n: 7.6.3
birthday n: 7.1.4
bit n: 5.2.52.5, 6.4.3
bitter adj: 6.5.1.6
black adj: 6.5.1.9
blanket n: 7.2.3
blouse n: 7.9.3
blue adj: 6.5.1.9, 7.5.3
board n: 7.5.5
board vb: 7.5.1
boarding-pass n: 7.5.1
boat n: 7.5.1
boil vb: 6.2.8.7, 7.10.1
bomb n: 7.6.6, 7.6.7
book n: 7.4.6
book vb: 7.5.1, 7.5.5
booking office n: 7.4.4, 7.5.1
bookshop n: 7.4.6
booth n: 7.11.2
border n: 7.5.7
bored adj: 5.2.39.2
boring adj: 5.2.39.1
born adj: 7.1.4
borrow vb: 7.11.4
boss n: 7.1.10
both pr adj: 6.4.2, 6.8.2
bottle n: 6.4.2, 7.9.5
bottom n: 7.2.7
box n: 6.4.2, 7.5.6, 7.11.1
boy n: 7.1.6
boy-friend n: 7.6.1
brake n: 7.11.8
bread n: 7.10.1
break n: 7.3.2
break vb: 6.5.1.11, 7.7.4
breakfast n: 7.3.1, 7.5.5, 7.10.1
bridge n: 7.5.3
(in) brief adj: 5.5.9.2
bright adj: 6.5.1.9
bring vb: 6.2.5
brother n: 7.1.11
brown adj: 6.5.1.9
brush n: 7.7.3
Brussels n: 7.1.2
building n: 7.2.1
bullet n: 7.6.7
bureau n: 7.5.1
burglar n: 7.6.6
burglary n: 7.6.6
burn vb: 6.2.8.7, 7.7.4
bus n: 7.5.1
bush n: 7.2.8
business n: 7.5.1
business-man n: 7.1.10
business-woman n: 7.1.10
but conj: 5.2.22.4, 6.7.6.1
butcher n: 7.1.10, 7.9.1
butter n: 7.10.1
button n: 7.5.5
buy vb: 7.1.10, 7.2.1
by prep: 7.5.1
by all means adv: 5.5.16.2
bye-bye int: 5.4.12.2.1
C [si:]
cab n: 7.5.1
cabaret n: 7.4.4
cabbage n: 7.10.1
cabin n: 7.5.1
cable n: 7.4.3
café n: 7.10.2
cake n: 7.10.1
call vb: 5.5.2.2, 5.5.26, 5.6.9.2, 6.6.10.4,
7.1.1, 7.1.3, 7.5.5
call-box n: 7.11.2
camera n: 7.5.6
camp n: 7.5.5
camp site n: 7.5.5
can vb: 5.2.9.8, 5.2.10.3, 5.2.17.1, 5.2.19.3,
5.2.20.1, 5.2.23.6, 5.3.3.7, 5.3.8.1, 5.3.9.2,
5.3.14.2, 6.5.2.10
canal n: 7.2.7
cancel vb: 7.5.1
cannot (can’t) vb: 5.2.7.1, 5.2.9.8,
5.2.11.2, 5.2.22.2, 5.3.12.2, 6.5.2.10
canteen n: 7.3.2, 7.10.2
car n: 7.5.2
card n: 7.4.7, 7.5.5, 7.9.6
care vb: 5.2.39.6
careful adj: 5.3.5.1
carpentry n: 7.4.2
carrot n: 7.10.1
carry vb: 6.2.5
cash n and vb: 7.5.5, 7.11.4
cassette n: 7.4.3
cassette recorder n: 7.4.3
castle n: 7.5.4
cat n: 7.2.8
cathedral n: 7.1.12, 7.5.4
cauliflower n: 7.10.1
CD [si:dı:] n: 7.4.3
cellar n: 7.2.2
centimetre n: 6.2.8.2
central adj: 7.2.5
centre n: 6.2.2, 7.4.4
century n: 6.3.2
certain adj: 5.2.9, 5.2.10, 5.2.13.1.2, 6.6.1
certainly adv: 5.2.1.6.3, 5.2.1.7.3, 5.2.2.4.3, 5.2.9.1, 5.2.13.1.1, 5.2.21.2
certificate n: 7.8.3
chair n: 7.2.3
chair(person) n: 5.5.1.2.2
chairman n: 5.5.1.2.1
change vb: 5.5.10.2, 6.3.27, 7.5.1, 7.5.7, 7.9.1, 7.11.4, 7.11.9
charge n: 7.10.2
charter n: 7.5.1
cheap adj: 6.5.2.1
check vb: 7.11.9
check in vb: 7.5.1
check out vb: 7.5.5
cheerio! int: 5.4.12.2.2
cheers! int: 5.4.11.1
cheese n: 7.10.1
chemist n: 7.7.5
cheque n: 7.5.5, 7.11.4
chess n: 7.4.7
chest n: 7.7.1
chicken n: 7.10.1
child n: 6.5.1.10, 7.1.11
chips n: 7.10.1
chocolate n: 7.10.1
choose vb: 7.10.2
Christian adj: 7.1.1
church n: 7.1.12
cigar n: 7.9.4
cigarette n: 7.9.4
cinema n: 7.4.4
circus n: 7.4.4
city n: 7.1.2
civil servant n: 7.1.10
class n: 7.5.1
classical adj: 7.4.3
clean adj and vb: 6.5.1.13, 7.2.6, 7.3.1, 7.7.3
clear adj: 5.6.14.1, 7.13.1
clerk adj: 7.1.10
climate n: 7.14.1
cloakroom n: 7.4.4
close vb: 6.5.1.12, 7.4.5
closed adj: 6.5.1.12, 7.4.5
closing time n: 7.4.5
clothes n pl: 7.9.3
club n: 7.4.7, 7.6.4
coach n: 7.5.1
coast n: 7.2.7
coat n: 7.9.3
cod n: 7.10.1
coffee n: 7.10.1
coffee shop n: 7.10.2
coin n: 7.9.6
cold n: 7.7.4
cold adj: 6.2.8.7
colleague n: 7.3.2
collect vb: 7.4.2
collection n: 7.11.1
college n: 7.8.1
Cologne n: 7.1.2
comb n: 7.7.3
come vb: 5.3.6.1, 6.2.4, 7.1.9
come and see vb: 7.6.2
come from vb: 7.1.9
come in vb: 5.5.14.2
comedy n: 7.4.3
comfortable adj: 7.7.2
commercial adj: 7.4.3
communist n: 7.6.5
compact adj: 7.4.3
company n: 7.1.10
computer n: 7.4.2, 7.8.2
concert n: 7.4.4
conclusion n: 5.5.19.3
congratulations! int: 5.4.10.1
connection n: 7.5.1
conservative n: 7.6.5
consul n: 7.11.6
consulate n: 7.11.6
control n: 7.5.7
cook vb: 7.3.1
cool adj: 6.2.8.7
Copenhagen n: 7.1.2
corner n: 7.5.3
correct adj: 5.2.1.3, 6.5.2.7
correspond vb: 7.6.3
cost vb: 6.5.2.1
cotton n: 6.5.1.14
could vb: 5.3.1.3, 5.3.3.3, 5.3.8.1
country n: 7.1.2, 7.5.4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>course</td>
<td>n: 7.8.1, 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course</td>
<td>adv: 5.2.1.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court</td>
<td>n: 7.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>n: 7.1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>n: 7.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream</td>
<td>n: 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit</td>
<td>n: 7.5.5, 7.9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card</td>
<td>n: 7.5.5, 7.9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cricket</td>
<td>n: 7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime</td>
<td>n: 7.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criminal</td>
<td>n: 7.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross</td>
<td>vb: 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crossing</td>
<td>n: 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>n: 6.4.1, 6.4.2, 7.9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupboard</td>
<td>n: 7.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currency</td>
<td>adj: 7.5.7, 7.11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current</td>
<td>adj: 7.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curtain</td>
<td>n: 7.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customs</td>
<td>n: 7.5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>vb: 6.5.1.11, 7.7.3, 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycle</td>
<td>n: 7.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyclist</td>
<td>n: 7.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delayed</td>
<td>adj: 6.3.15, 7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delighted</td>
<td>adj: 5.2.29.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentist</td>
<td>n: 7.7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department</td>
<td>n: 7.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure</td>
<td>n: 7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desk</td>
<td>n: 7.2.3, 7.5.1, 7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dessert</td>
<td>n: 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detective</td>
<td>n: 7.4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dial</td>
<td>vb: 7.11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionary</td>
<td>n: 7.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>vb: 6.5.1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diet</td>
<td>n and vb: 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ</td>
<td>vb: 6.7.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference</td>
<td>n: 6.7.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>adj: 6.7.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>n: 6.5.2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>n: 7.3.1, 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diploma</td>
<td>n: 7.8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.1.13, 7.7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disarmament</td>
<td>n: 7.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disc</td>
<td>n: 7.4.3, 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disc jockey</td>
<td>n: 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disco (thèque)</td>
<td>n: 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discount</td>
<td>n: 7.9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease</td>
<td>n: 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish</td>
<td>n: 7.9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance</td>
<td>n: 6.2.3, 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divorced</td>
<td>adj: 7.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td>adj: 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>vb: 5.1.35, 5.2.21.3, 5.2.35.5.3, 5.2.36.7, 6.5.2.5, 6.8.12, 6.8.2, 7.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declare</td>
<td>vb: 5.4.6.1, 7.1.10, 7.7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor (Dr)</td>
<td>n: 7.5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentary</td>
<td>adj and n: 7.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>n: 7.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't</td>
<td>vb: 5.3.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>n: 7.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double</td>
<td>adj: 7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt</td>
<td>n and vb: 6.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>adv and prep: 6.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downstairs</td>
<td>adv: 7.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama</td>
<td>n: 7.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>vb: 7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress</td>
<td>n and vb: 7.9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dressed</td>
<td>adj: 7.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dressing</td>
<td>n: 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
drink n and vb: 7.10.1
drive vb: 7.5.2, 7.5.7
driver n: 7.5.1, 7.5.2
driving licence n: 7.5.8
drugs n: 7.6.6
dry adj and vb: 6.5.1.3
dull adj: 6.5.1.9
during prep: 6.3.4
dust vb: 6.5.1.13
Dutch adj: 7.13.1
duty n: 7.5.7
duty-free adj: 7.5.7

E [iː]
each adj: 6.4.2, 6.8.2
early adj: 6.3.5
earn vb: 7.3.3
east n: 6.2.1, 6.2.5
easy adj: 6.5.2.13
eat vb: 7.10.1
economics n: 7.8.2
education n: 7.8.1
egg n: 7.10.1
either conj: 6.7.6.1
elect vb: 7.6.5
election n: 7.6.5
electricity n: 7.2.5

driving licence n: 7.5.8
even adv: 6.4.3
evening n: 5.4.2.2, 6.3.2
ever adv: 5.2.4.3, 6.3.17
every adj: 6.3.17
everybody pron: 6.8.2
everything pron: 6.8.2
everywhere adv: 6.2.1, 6.8.2
exactly adv: 5.2.1.5, 5.5.3.4
examination n: 7.8.3
example n: 5.5.7.1
excellent adj: 5.2.54.2, 6.5.2.2
except prep: 6.7.6.3

explain vb: 5.6.6.4, 7.13.1

F [ef]
fact n: 5.5.8.4.5
factory n: 7.1.3, 7.2.7
fall vb: 6.5.2.8, 7.8.3
failure n: 6.5.2.8
fair adj: 7.1.15
faithfully adv: 5.5.28.2
fall vb: 6.2.4, 7.7.4
false adj: 6.5.2.7
family n: 7.1.1, 7.1.11
fancy (that)! int: 5.2.41.3, 5.2.41.7
far adv: 5.1.4.2.1, 6.2.3
fare n: 7.5.1
farm n: 7.1.10, 7.2.7
farm worker n: 7.1.10
farmland n: 7.2.7
fast adv: 5.6.11.2, 6.3.16, 6.7.3.9, 7.5.1
fasten vb: 6.5.1.11
fat adj: 7.1.15
father n: 7.1.11
fax n and vb: 7.11.3
feel vb: 5.2.29.3, 5.2.30.3, 5.2.31.2, 7.7.2

7.7.4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>female</td>
<td>adj: 7.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferry n</td>
<td>7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever n</td>
<td>7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few adj</td>
<td>6.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field n</td>
<td>7.2.7, 7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight vb</td>
<td>7.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill vb</td>
<td>6.5.1.16, 7.7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film n</td>
<td>7.4.2, 7.4.3, 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final adj</td>
<td>7.8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finally adv</td>
<td>5.5.19.1, 6.3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find vb</td>
<td>5.2.37.5, 5.2.56.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine n and vb</td>
<td>7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine adj</td>
<td>5.2.35.2, 5.2.54.2, 6.5.2.2, 6.5.2.4, 7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish vb</td>
<td>5.5.17.3, 5.5.19.2, 6.3.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire n</td>
<td>7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firm n</td>
<td>7.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first adj</td>
<td>5.5.6.1, 6.3.9, 7.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first adv</td>
<td>5.5.6.2, 6.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish n and vb</td>
<td>7.2.8, 7.4.2, 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat n</td>
<td>7.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat adj</td>
<td>7.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight n</td>
<td>7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor n</td>
<td>7.2.2, 7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor show n</td>
<td>7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florence n</td>
<td>7.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flour n</td>
<td>7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower n</td>
<td>7.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flute n</td>
<td>7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly n</td>
<td>7.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly vb</td>
<td>7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog n</td>
<td>7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foggy adj</td>
<td>7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folk adj and n</td>
<td>7.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>follow vb</td>
<td>6.2.5, 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot n</td>
<td>6.2.8.2, 7.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football n</td>
<td>7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for prep</td>
<td>5.5.6.4, 6.2.5, 6.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid vb</td>
<td>6.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force n</td>
<td>7.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign adj</td>
<td>7.1.8, 7.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreigner n</td>
<td>7.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forename n</td>
<td>7.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest n</td>
<td>7.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget vb</td>
<td>5.2.7.2, 5.2.52.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive vb</td>
<td>5.2.51.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fork n</td>
<td>7.9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form n</td>
<td>7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formerly adv</td>
<td>6.3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortnight n</td>
<td>6.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free adj</td>
<td>7.3.2, 7.4.1, 7.5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze vb</td>
<td>6.2.8.7, 7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French adj</td>
<td>7.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh(ly) adj and adv</td>
<td>7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fridge n</td>
<td>7.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend n</td>
<td>7.6.1, 7.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened adj</td>
<td>5.2.46.2, 5.2.48.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from prep</td>
<td>6.2.5, 6.2.6, 6.3.24, 7.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front n</td>
<td>6.2.2, 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frontier n</td>
<td>7.5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frost n</td>
<td>7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit n</td>
<td>7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit juice n</td>
<td>7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fry vb</td>
<td>7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full adj</td>
<td>6.5.1.16, 7.5.5, 7.11.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furnished adj</td>
<td>7.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture n</td>
<td>7.2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gale n</td>
<td>7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gallery n</td>
<td>7.4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gallon n</td>
<td>6.2.8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game n</td>
<td>7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garage n</td>
<td>7.2.6, 7.11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden n</td>
<td>7.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gardening n</td>
<td>7.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas n</td>
<td>7.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate n</td>
<td>7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generous adj</td>
<td>7.1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentleman n</td>
<td>5.5.1.1.1, 7.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geography n</td>
<td>7.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German adj</td>
<td>7.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get vb</td>
<td>6.3.27, 6.7.5.1, 7.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get at vb</td>
<td>6.5.1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up vb</td>
<td>6.2.4, 7.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl n</td>
<td>7.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl-friend n</td>
<td>7.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give vb</td>
<td>5.3.9.3, 6.7.5.1, 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glad adj</td>
<td>5.2.29.5, 5.3.11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glass n</td>
<td>6.4.2, 6.5.1.14, 7.9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasses n pl</td>
<td>7.7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go vb</td>
<td>6.2.4, 6.3.24, 7.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go for vb</td>
<td>7.4.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
go on vb: 5.5.18.1, 6.3.18

go out vb: 7.4.1

goat n: 7.2.8

god n: 7.1.12

(be) going to vb: 5.2.25.1, 6.3.11

good adj: 5.2.32.1, 5.2.35.1, 5.2.35.3, 5.2.35.4, 5.2.36.8, 5.2.49.3, 5.2.54.1, 5.2.55.2, 5.3.2.3, 5.3.12.3, 5.4.2.2, 5.4.6.1, 5.4.11.2, 5.4.12.1, 5.6.6.2, 6.5.2.2, 7.1.14

goodbye int: 5.4.12.3.1

govern vb: 7.6.5

government n: 7.6.5

gram(me) n: 6.2.8.4

gramophone n: 7.4.3

grandchild n: 7.1.11

grandfather n: 7.1.11

grandmother n: 7.1.11

grant n and vb: 7.3.3

grape n: 7.10.1

grateful adj: 5.2.49.4

great adj: 5.2.29.1

greatly adv: 5.2.38.5

green adv: 6.5.1.9

greengrocer n: 7.1.10, 7.9.1

grey adv: 6.5.1.9

grill vb: 7.10.1

grocer n: 7.1.10, 7.9.1

ground n: 7.4.7

group n: 6.7.6.1, 7.5.4

guest n: 7.5.5, 7.6.2

guest-house n: 7.5.5

guide n and vb: 7.5.4

guitar n: 7.4.4

gun n: 7.6.6, 7.6.7

happy adj: 5.2.29.3, 5.2.30.2, 5.2.31.3

harbour n: 7.5.1

hard adj: and adv: 6.5.1.8, 6.5.2.13, 6.7.3.9

hardly adv: 6.4.2, 6.4.3

hat n: 7.9.3

hate n and vb: 5.2.33.5

have vb: 5.3.3.7, 6.7.3.6, 6.7.5.1, 7.7.4, 7.10.1

have got vb: 6.1.3, 6.7.5.1

have to vb: 5.2.15.1

he pron: 5.1.1.4

head n: 7.7.1

health n: 5.4.11.2, 7.7.4

hear vb: 5.2.6.2, 5.5.24.2, 6.5.1.5

heart n: 7.7.1

heat vb and n: 6.2.8.7

heating n: 7.7.5

heavy adj: 6.2.8.3, 6.2.8.4

help n and vb: 5.2.46.1, 5.3.8.1, 5.3.9.1, 5.3.9.2, 7.11.8

help-yourself n: 7.10.2

her pron and adj: 5.1.1.2

here adv: 5.4.11.3, 5.5.21.2.1, 6.2.1, 6.8.1.2

high adj: 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.3, 6.5.2.1

hijack vb: 7.6.6

hijacker n: 7.6.6

hill n: 7.2.7

him pron: 5.1.1.2

hire vb: 7.5.2

history n: 7.8.2

hobby n: 7.4.2

hockey n: 7.4.7

hold vb: 5.5.23.1

holiday n: 6.3.2, 7.4.1

home n and adv: 7.3.1

hope n and vb: 5.2.44, 6.6.1

horrible adj: 5.2.33.3

horse n: 7.2.8, 7.4.7

hospital n: 7.1.10, 7.7.5

hostel n: 7.5.5

hostess n: 7.5.1

hot adj: 5.1.4.2.1, 6.2.8.7

hotel n: 7.5.5

hour n: 6.3.2

house n: 7.2.1, 7.5.5
WORD INDEX

how adv: 5.1.4.2.1, 5.1.5.2.3, 5.2.31, 5.2.38.3, 5.2.39.1, 5.2.56.1, 5.3.1.4, 5.4.3, 5.4.4, 6.7.3.9
how do you do? int: 5.4.9.1.1
how much adv: 6.5.2.1
hunger n: 7.7.2
hungry adj: 7.7.2
hurry vb: 6.2.4
hurt vb: 7.7.4
hurt adj: 6.5.1.11
husband n: 7.1.11

I [ai]
I pron: 5.1.1.4
ice n: 7.14.1
ice-cream n: 7.10.1
idea n: 5.3.2.3
if conj: 5.2.20.2, 5.2.20.3, 6.7.6.8
ill adj: 6.5.1.11, 7.7.4
illness n: 7.7.4
immigration n: 7.5.7
import vb: 7.5.7
important adj: 5.5.8.4.3, 5.5.8.4.4, 6.5.2.11
impossible adj: 5.2.95, 5.2.9.7
in adv and prep: 6.2.2, 6.2.5
inch n: 6.2.8.2
included adj: 7.2.4
income n: 7.3.3
incorrect adj: 6.5.2.7
indeed adv: 5.2.14, 5.5.13.5
industry n: 7.2.7
inexpensive adj: 6.5.2.1
information n: 7.5.1
initial n: 7.1.1
inn n: 7.5.5
insect n: 7.2.8
inside adv and prep: 6.2.1, 6.2.2
instance n: 5.5.7.2
insurance n: 7.5.8, 7.7.6
insure vb: 7.7.6
intelligent adj: 7.1.14
intend vb: 5.2.25.3
interest n and vb: 5.2.38.5, 5.2.39.4, 5.2.40.2
interested adj: 5.2.38.4, 5.2.39.3, 5.2.40.1
interesting adj: 5.2.38.3
interpret vb: 7.13.1
interval n: 7.4.4
into prep: 6.2.5
introduce vb: 5.4.8.1.1
invisible adj: 6.5.1.4
invitation n: 7.6.2
invite vb: 6.6.2, 7.6.2
island n: 7.2.7
issue n: 7.6.8
it pron: 5.1.1.1, 5.1.1.4, 8.2
Italian adj: 7.13.1

J [dʒei]
jacket n: 7.9.3
jam n: 7.10.1
jar n: 7.9.5
jazz n: 7.4.3
jewellery n: 7.9.3
job n: 7.1.10
join vb: 7.6.2
journalist n: 7.4.8
journey n: 7.5.1, 7.5.4
judge n: 7.6.6
jug n: 7.9.5
juice n: 7.10.1
jury n: 7.6.6
just adv: 6.3.13

K [kei]
keep vb: 5.4.5.1, 6.3.26, 6.7.5.1, 7.5.3
key n: 7.5.5
kidnap vb: 7.6.6
kidnapper n: 7.6.6
kill vb: 7.6.6
killed adj: 7.7.4
killer n: 7.6.6
kilo(gramme) n: 6.2.8.4
kilometre n: 6.2.8.2, 6.3.16
kind n: 5.6.12.1
kind adj: 5.2.49.3, 5.3.3.4, 7.1.14
kindly adv: 5.3.3.5
king n: 7.6.5
kitchen n: 7.2.2
knife n: 7.9.5
knitting n: 7.4.1
know vb: 5.2.5, 5.2.6, 5.2.13.1.6,
5.2.13.3.1, 5.5.2.1.2, 6.6.1

L [el]
labourer n: 7.1.10
lady n: 5.5.1.1.1, 7.1.6
lake n: 7.2.7
lamb n: 7.10.1
lamp n: 7.2.3
land n: 7.2.7
language n: 7.13.1
large adj: 6.2.8.1
last adj: 6.3.3, 6.3.13
last adv: 6.2.7
late adj: 6.3.6
lately adv: 6.3.13
later adv: 5.5.26, 6.3.8, 6.3.9, 6.3.15
laugh vb: 6.6.2
laundry n: 7.7.3
lavatory n: 7.2.2, 7.4.4
law n: 7.6.6
lawn n: 7.4.7
lawyer n: 7.6.6
lazy adj: 7.1.14
lbs (pounds) n: 6.2.8.4
leader n: 7.6.5
learn vb: 7.3.5, 7.4.6, 7.8.1
leather n: 6.5.1.14
leave n: 6.2.4
lecture n: 7.8.1
left n, adj and adv: 6.2.5, 7.5.3, 7.6.5
left n: 7.7.1
leisure n: 7.4.1
lemon n: 7.10.1
lend vb: 7.11.4
lesson n: 7.8.1
let vb: 5.3.9.1, 7.2.4
let’s vb: 5.3.1.1
letter n: 7.1.1, 7.6.3, 7.11.1
letter-box n: 7.11.1
level adj: 7.5.3
level crossing n: 7.5.3
liberal n and adj: 7.6.5
library n: 7.4.6
licence n: 7.5.8
lie down vb: 6.2.4

lift n: 7.2.2, 7.5.5
light adj: 6.2.8.3, 6.2.8.4, 6.5.1.4, 6.5.1.9
light n: 7.5.3, 7.11.8
lightning n: 7.14.1
like vb: 5.2.23, 5.2.24, 5.2.32, 5.2.33,
5.2.34, 5.2.36.3, 5.2.36.4, 5.3.10.1,
5.3.11.7, 5.3.14.1, 5.5.4.1, 5.6.12.2,
6.5.2.4, 6.5.2.6
like adj: 6.7.4.2
likely adj: 5.2.9.4, 5.2.9.6, 5.2.9.7,
5.2.10.1, 5.2.10.2
limit n: 7.5.3
line n: 5.5.23.1
Lisbon n: 7.1.2
listen vb: 6.5.1.5, 7.4.3
litre n: 6.2.8.5
(a) little pron: 6.4.2, 6.4.3, 7.13.1
live vb: 7.1.2, 7.7.4
living adj: 7.1.10
living room n: 7.2.2
locker n: 7.5.6
long adj: 5.1.4.2.1, 6.2.8.2, 6.2.8.3
look vb: 5.3.5.1, 6.5.1.4, 6.5.1.11, 7.7.2
lorry n: 7.5.2
lose vb: 7.4.7, 7.5.3, 7.11.5
lost property office n: 7.5.1
lot n: 6.4.2
a lot pron: 6.4.3
loud adj: 6.5.1.5
lounge n: 7.5.1, 7.5.5
love n and vb: 5.2.32.3, 5.3.11.7, 5.4.7.2,
5.5.28.1.3
lovely adj: 5.2.29.1
lover n: 7.6.1
low adj: 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.3, 6.5.2.1
luggage n: 7.5.1, 7.5.6
lunch n: 7.3.1, 7.10.1
lung n: 7.7.1

M [em]
Madam n: 5.4.7.1, 5.5.27.2.1
magazine n: 7.4.8
mail n: 7.11.1
main adj: 7.5.3, 7.10.1
make vb: 6.1.1, 6.5.1.14, 7.3.1, 7.4.6
male n and adj: 7.1.6
man n: 6.8.2, 7.1.6
manage vb: 5.3.9.4
manager n: 7.1.1
many adj and pron: 5.2.49.2, 6.3.22, 6.4.2
map n: 7.5.3
market n: 7.9.1
married adj: 7.1.7
master n: 7.8.1
matches n: 7.9.5
material n: 6.5.1.14
mathematics n: 7.8.2
matinee n: 7.4.4
matter n: 5.2.37.6, 5.5.12.3
matter vb: 5.2.39.5, 5.2.52.4
may vb: 5.2.9.8, 5.2.10.3, 5.2.19.3, 5.2.20.1, 5.2.23.5, 5.3.14.3
maybe adv: 5.2.13.2.2
me pron: 5.1.1.1
meal n: 7.3.1, 7.10.1
mean vb: 5.2.35.4, 5.2.36.6, 5.2.37.4, 5.2.41.4
means n: 6.7.3.9
meat n: 7.10.1
medicine n: 7.7.5
meet vb: 5.4.8.1.2, 5.4.8.22, 5.4.9.2.1, 5.4.12.3, 7.6.4
meeting n: 5.5.1.2, 7.6.4
member n: 7.10.2
message n: 7.5.5
metal n: 6.5.1.14
metre n: 6.2.8.2
midnight n: 6.3.1
might vb: 5.3.1.5
mild adj: 7.14.1
mile n: 6.2.8.2, 6.3.16
milk n: 7.10.1
millimetre n: 6.2.8.2
mineral adj: 7.10.1
mineral water n: 7.10.1
mind n: 5.2.35.4, 5.2.36.6, 5.2.37.4, 5.2.48.4
mind vb: 5.2.39.7, 5.3.3.6, 5.3.5.3
mine pron: 6.7.5.1, 6.8.1.1
minister n: 7.6.5
minute n: 5.5.17.2, 6.3.1, 6.3.2
miserable adj: 5.2.30.3
Miss n: 5.4.6.1, 7.1.1
missle n: 7.6.7
mist n: 7.14.1
mistake n: 7.13.1
mix vb: 7.10.1
modern adj: 7.4.3, 7.4.5
moist adj: 6.5.1.3
moment n: 5.5.2.1.4, 5.5.17.1, 5.5.23.2, 6.3.2
money n: 7.5.7, 7.9.6
month n: 6.3.2, 6.3.13, 6.5.1.10
monthly adv: 6.3.17
more adj, pron and adv: 6.4.2
morning n: 5.4.2.2, 6.3.2
mosque n: 7.1.12
most adj, pron and adv: 6.4.2
mother n: 7.1.11
motor n: 7.5.2
motor cycle n: 7.5.2
motorway n: 7.5.3
mountain n: 7.2.7
move vb: 6.2.4
Mr [mista] n: 5.4.6.1, 7.1.1
Mrs [miziz] n: 5.4.6.1, 7.1.1
Ms [maz] n: 7.1.1
much adv, adj and pron: 5.1.4.2.1, 6.4.2, 6.4.3
murder vb: 7.6.6
murderer n: 7.6.6
museum n: 7.4.5
mushroom n: 7.10.1
music n: 7.4.2
musical n and adj: 7.4.4
musician n: 7.4.4
must vb: 5.2.9.8, 5.2.10.3, 5.2.11.2, 5.2.12.2, 5.2.15.1, 5.2.19.3, 5.3.10.4
mustard n: 7.10.1
mutton n: 7.10.1
my adj: 6.7.5.1, 6.8.1.1
myself pron: 6.8.1.2
N [en]
name n: 5.5.2.2.1, 7.1.1
narrow adj: 6.2.8.1
nasty adj: 5.2.33.3
nationality n: 7.1.8
NATO n: 7.6.5
navy n: 7.6.7
near prep: 6.2.3
necessarily adv: 5.2.11.1, 5.2.12.1
necessary adj: 5.2.11.1, 5.2.12.1
neck n: 7.7.1
need vb: 5.2.11.3, 5.2.35.4, 5.2.37.4
neighbourhood n: 6.2.3
network n: 7.4.3
never adv: 5.2.4.3, 6.3.17, 6.8.2
new adj: 6.5.1.10
news n: 7.4.3
neighbourhood n: 6.2.3
network n: 7.4.3
never adv: 5.2.4.3, 6.3.17, 6.8.2
new adj: 6.5.1.10
news n: 7.4.3
next adj and adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.9, 6.3.11
next (to) prep: 6.2.2
nice adj: 5.2.29.2, 5.2.32.1, 5.2.33.2, 5.2.35.3, 5.2.49.3, 5.2.55.2, 5.3.11.3, 6.5.1.6, 6.5.1.7, 6.5.2.4, 7.1.14
night n: 6.3.2
night-club n: 7.4.4
no adv: 5.1.3.2, 5.1.5.1, 5.2.1.7.1, 5.2.2.4.1, 5.2.4.2, 5.2.22.1, 5.3.12.1, 5.5.3.1, 5.5.13.2, 6.4.2
nobody pron: 5.2.4.3, 6.8.2
noise n: 6.5.1.5
noon n: 6.3.1
normal adj: 6.5.2.12
north n and adv: 6.2.1, 6.2.5
not adv: 5.2.1.7.2, 5.2.1.7.3, 5.2.1.7.5, 5.2.2.2, 5.2.2.4.2, 5.2.2.4.3, 5.2.4.3
not at all adv: 5.2.52.1, 7.13.1
note n and vb: 5.5.8.4.2, 7.6.3
note paper n: 7.6.3
nothing pron: 5.2.4.3, 6.8.2
novel n: 7.4.6
now adv: 5.3.6.2, 6.3.3, 6.3.12, 7.5.3, 6.8.1.2
nowhere adv: 6.2.1, 6.8.2
nuclear adj: 7.6.7
number n: 7.1.2
nurse n and vb: 7.1.10, 7.7.5
nut n: 7.10.1
nylon n: 6.5.1.14

O [ɔu]
occupation n: 7.1.10
o'clock adj: 6.3.1

odour n: 6.5.1.7
of prep: 5.6.2.1
of course adv: 5.2.1.7.2, 5.2.21.6
off prep and adv: 6.2.5, 6.3.1.9, 7.2.5, 7.3.2
office n: 7.1.10, 7.4.4, 7.5.1, 7.5.4, 7.11.1
officer n: 7.6.7
often adv: 6.3.17
oh! int: 5.5.13.5
oh dear! int: 5.2.30.1, 5.2.57.7
oil n: 7.10.1, 7.11.9
old adj: 6.5.1.10, 7.4.5
omelette n: 7.10.1
on prep and adv: 6.2.2, 6.2.5, 6.3.3, 6.3.19, 6.7.6.9, 7.2.5
once adv: 6.3.17, 6.3.23
one pron: 5.1.1.1, 7.5.3
one n and adj: 6.8.1.2
one-way adj: 7.5.3
only adv: 6.3.23, 6.7.6.9
open adj and vb: 6.5.1.12, 7.4.5, 7.5.7
opening hours n: 7.4.5
opera n: 7.4.4
operate vb: 7.7.4
operation n: 7.7.4
operator n: 7.11.2
opinion n: 5.5.5.2, 5.5.12.2
opposite prep: 6.2.2
or conj: 5.2.28.1, 5.2.28.2, 6.7.6.2
orange n: 7.10.1
orange adj: 6.5.1.9
order n and vb: 6.5.1.11, 6.7.6.7, 7.10.2, 7.11.2
ordinary adj: 6.5.2.12
other adj: 6.7.4.1, 6.8.1.2
ought vb: 5.2.53.2, 5.3.4.2, 6.5.2.3
ounce (oz) n: 6.2.8.4
out adv: 5.3.5.1, 6.2.5
out of prep: 6.2.6, 7.11.2
out of order adj: 7.11.2
outside adv and prep: 6.2.1, 6.2.2
over adv and prep: 6.2.2
own vb and adj: 6.7.5.1
owner n: 6.7.5.1
oz (ounce) n: 6.2.8.4
P [piː]

- packet n: 6.4.2
- page n: 7.4.8
- pain n: 7.7.4
- painting n: 7.4.5, 7.4.6
- pair n: 6.7.6.1
- paper n: 6.5.1.14, 7.4.8, 7.6.3
- parcel n: 7.11.1
- pardon n: 5.2.51.7
- parents n: 7.1.11
- park vb: 7.1.2
- parking n: 7.5.3
- parliament n: 7.6.5
- part n: 7.2.7
- partner n: 7.6.1
- party n: 7.6.2, 7.6.5, 7.7.6
- pass vb: 6.2.4, 7.8.3
- passenger n: 7.5.1
- passport n: 7.5.7, 7.5.8
- past adj: 6.2.5, 6.3.1
- pastry n: 7.10.1
- patient n: 7.7.5
- pay vb: 7.5.5, 7.5.7, 7.9.6
- pea n: 7.10.1
- peace n: 7.6.7
- peanut n: 7.10.1
- pear n: 7.10.1
- pedestrian n: 7.5.3
- peel n and vb: 7.10.1
- pen n: 7.6.3
- pen friend n: 7.6.3
- pencil n: 7.6.3
- penny n: 7.9.6
- pension n: 7.3.3
- people n pl: 6.8.2
- pepper n: 7.10.1
- per prep: 6.3.17
- performance n: 7.4.4
- perfume n: 6.5.1.7
- perhaps adv: 5.2.13.2.2
- permitted adj: 5.2.19.2, 5.2.22.5
- person n: 6.8.2
- pet n: 7.2.8
- petrol n: 7.11.9
- phone n and vb: 7.1.3, 7.11.2
- photography n: 7.4.2, 7.4.4

physician n: 7.1.10
physics n: 7.8.2
piano n: 7.4.4
picture n: 7.4.5, 7.4.8
pie n: 7.10.1
piece n: 6.4.2, 7.10.1
pig n: 7.2.8
pill n: 7.7.5
pillow n: 7.2.3
pint n: 6.2.8.5
pipe n: 7.9.4
pity n: 5.2.45, 5.2.57
place n: 5.5.6.1, 7.1.4
placé n: 7.10.1
plain adj: 7.1.15
plane n: 7.5.1
plant n: 7.2.8
plastic n and adj: 6.5.1.14
plate n: 7.9.5
platform n: 7.5.1
play vb: 7.4.3, 7.4.4, 7.4.7
player n: 7.4.3, 7.4.7
playing-cards n: 7.4.7
pleasant adj: 5.2.32.1, 5.2.33.2, 6.5.1.7, 7.1.14
please int: 5.3.3, 5.3.14
pleased adj: 5.2.29.4, 5.2.31.4, 5.4.9.2.1
pleasure n: 5.2.50.3, 5.3.11.5
p.m. adv: 6.3.1
pocket n: 7.9.3
poem n: 7.4.6
police n: 7.6.6
policeman n: 7.6.6
policewoman n: 7.6.6
polish vb: 6.5.1.13
political adj: 7.6.5
politics n: 7.4.2, 7.6.5
pollution n: 7.6.8
poor adj: 6.5.2.2, 7.6.8
pop(ular) adj: 7.4.3, 7.4.4
pork n: 7.10.1
porter n: 7.5.6
possible adj: 5.2.9, 5.2.10.2
possibly adv: 5.2.9.3
post n and vb: 7.11.1
post office n: 7.11.1
postage n: 7.11.1
postcard n: 7.6.3
poste-restante adv: 7.11.1
postman n: 7.11.1
pot n: 7.3.1, 7.9.5
potato n: 7.10.1
poultry n: 7.10.1
pound (lb) n: 6.2.8.4
pound (£) n: 7.9.6
poverty n: 7.6.8
prefer vb: 5.2.27, 5.5.28
prescription n: 7.7.5
present n: 6.3.12, 7.6.2
president n: 7.6.5
press vb: 7.5.5
pretty adj: 7.1.15
price n: 6.5.2.1, 7.2.4
primary adj: 7.8.1
prime adj: 7.6.5
prime minister n: 7.6.5
prince n: 7.6.5
princess n: 7.6.5
prison n: 7.6.6
probable adj: 5.2.9.7, 5.2.10.2
probably adv: 5.2.9.2
problem n: 7.6.8
profession n: 7.1.10
professor n: 5.4.6.1, 7.8.1
programme n: 7.4.3, 7.4.4
pronounce vb: 7.13.1
property n: 7.5.1
pub n: 7.10.2
pull vb: 6.2.5, 7.5.5
punish vb: 7.6.6
punishment n: 7.6.6
pupil n: 7.8.1
purpose n: 6.7.6.7
purse n: 7.9.3
push vb: 6.2.5, 7.5.5
put vb: 5.5.2.1.6, 6.2.5
put on vb: 7.9.3
put through vb: 5.5.22.1.2
quay n: 7.5.1
queen n: 7.6.5
question n: 6.6.2, 7.6.8, 7.13.1
quick adj: 6.3.4
quickly adv: 6.7.3.9
quiet adj: 5.5.15.2, 6.5.1.5, 7.1.14
quilt n: 7.2.3
quite adv: 5.2.1.1, 5.2.21.5, 6.4.3
quiz n: 7.4.3
race n and vb: 7.4.7
racing n: 7.4.7
radio n: 7.2.6, 7.4.3
railway n: 7.5.1
rain n and vb: 7.14.1
raincoat n: 7.9.3
rainy adj: 7.14.1
raisin n: 7.10.1
rank n: 7.5.1
rape n and vb: 7.6.6
rarely adv: 6.3.17
rather adv: 5.2.27, 5.5.3.6, 6.4.3
razor n: 7.7.3
reach vb: 6.5.1.12
read vb: 7.4.6, 7.4.8, 7.13.1
reading n: 7.8.2
ready adj: 6.1.3
real adj: 6.5.1.15
really adv: 5.2.38.1, 5.5.13.4
reason n: 6.7.6.6
receipt n: 7.5.5
receive vb: 7.6.3
recently adv: 6.3.13
reception n: 7.5.5
recommend vb: 6.6.3
record n and vb: 7.4.3
recorder n: 7.4.3
red adj: 6.5.1.9
refreshments n: 7.5.1
register n and vb: 7.5.5
registration n: 7.5.5
religion n: 7.1.12
remain vb: 6.3.26
remember vb: 5.2.7, 5.2.8, 6.6.1
rent n and vb: 7.2.1, 7.2.4, 7.5.2
repair vb: 6.5.1.11, 7.11.8

Q [kJuː]
qualify vb: 7.3.5
quality n: 6.5.2.2
quarter n: 6.3.1, 6.3.2
repeat vb: 5.6.2.4
reporter n: 7.4.8
request vb: 6.6.2
reservation n: 7.5.5
rest vb: 7.7.2
restaurant n: 7.5.1, 7.10.2
result n: 6.7.6.5
return vb: 7.5.1
revue n: 7.4.4
rich adj: 7.6.8
ride vb: 7.4.7, 7.5.2
right n: 6.2.5
right adj: 5.2.1.2, 5.2.2.2, 5.2.35.5.2, 5.2.36.5, 5.2.37.3, 5.2.52.2, 5.3.11.6, 6.5.2.3, 6.5.2.7, 7.6.5
right adv: 5.3.11.6, 5.5.1.3.1, 7.5.3
ring up vb: 7.1.3
river n: 7.2.7
road n: 7.1.2, 7.5.3
rob vb: 7.6.6
robber n: 7.6.6
robbery n: 7.6.6
(bread) roll n: 7.10.1
room n: 6.2.8.6, 7.2.5, 7.5.5
rough adj: 6.5.1.8
round adj: 6.5.1.1
round adv and prep: 6.2.2
roundabout n: 7.5.3
row n: 7.4.4
rugby n: 7.4.7
ruins n: 7.5.4
run vb: 6.2.4
Russian adj: 7.13.1
sandwich n: 7.10.1
sanitary adj: 7.7.3
satisfied adj: 5.2.36.2, 5.2.37.1
saucer n: 7.9.5
sausage n: 7.10.1
say vb: 5.1.2.2, 5.4.1.3, 5.5.3.7, 5.5.4.1, 5.5.14.3, 5.5.17.4, 5.5.19.2, 5.6.2.3, 5.6.3.2, 5.6.4.1, 5.6.5.1, 5.6.9.1, 5.6.13, 6.6.2
school n: 7.1.10, 7.3.1, 7.8.1
science n: 7.8.2
scissors n: 7.7.3
scooter n: 7.5.2
sculpture n: 7.4.5, 7.4.6
sea n: 7.2.7
seaside n: 7.2.7
season n: 6.3.2
seat n: 7.4.4
second n: 6.3.2
second adj: 5.5.6.1
secondary adj: 7.8.1
secretary n: 7.1.10
security n: 7.3.1, 7.5.1
see vb: 5.4.12.2.3, 5.5.5.1, 6.5.1.4
seem vb: 5.2.13.2.1
seldom adv: 6.3.17
self-service n: 7.9.1, 7.10.2
sell vb: 6.2.5, 7.1.10
send vb: 7.6.3
sender n: 7.11.3
separated adj: 7.1.7
serve vb: 7.10.2
service n: 7.1.12, 7.10.2
several adj: 6.3.22, 6.4.2
sex n: 7.1.6
shl int: 5.5.15.1
shade n: 7.14.1
shall vb: 5.3.1.2
shame n: 5.2.45.2, 5.2.57.1
sharp adj: 5.3.5.4
shave vb: 7.7.3
she pron: 5.1.1.4
sheep n: 7.2.8
sheet n: 7.2.3
shine vb: 7.14.1
ship n: 7.5.1
shirt n: 7.9.3
shoe n: 7.9.3
shoot vb: 7.6.6
shop n and vb: 7.1.10, 7.3.1, 7.9.1, 7.10.2
shop assistant n: 7.1.10
shopping n: 7.3.1, 7.9.1
short adj: 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.2, 6.3.4, 7.1.15, 7.4.6
should vb: 5.2.53.2, 5.2.55.3, 5.3.4.1, 6.5.2.3
show n and vb: 7.4.3, 7.4.4, 7.9.1
shower n: 7.2.6, 7.3.1
shut vb and adj: 5.1.22
sick adj: 7.7.4
side n: 6.2.2
sign vb: 7.1.1
signature n: 7.1.1
signpost n: 7.5.3
sight n: 7.5.4
silence n: 6.5.1.5
silent adj: 6.5.1.5
silk n: 6.5.1.14
silver n: 6.5.1.14
since prep: 6.3.4, 6.3.24, 6.7.6.5
sincerely adv: 5.5.28.1.1
sing vb: 7.4.4
singer n: 7.4.4
single adj: 7.1.7, 7.5.1, 7.5.5
Sir n: 5.4.7.1, 5.5.27.2.1
sister n: 7.1.11
site n: 7.5.5
size n: 6.2.8
ski n and vb: 7.4.7
skirt n: 7.9.3
sleep n and vb: 7.3.1, 7.7.2
sleepy adj: 7.7.2
slice n: 7.10.1
slim adj: 7.1.15
slow adj: 6.3.16, 7.5.1
slowly adv: 5.6.11.1, 6.7.3.9
small adj: 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.6
smell n and vb: 6.5.1.7
smoke n and vb: 7.5.1, 7.9.4
smoking n: 7.9.4
smooth adj: 6.5.1.8
snack n: 7.10.1, 7.10.2
snooker n: 7.4.7
snow n and vb: 7.14.1
snowstorm n: 7.14.1
so adv and conj: 5.2.11.4, 5.2.38.2, 5.2.42.2, 5.2.44.1, 5.5.7.3, 6.4.3, 6.7.4.2, 6.7.6.5, 6.8.1.2
so-so adj: 5.4.4.2.1
soak n: 7.7.3
social adj: 7.3.2
socialist n and adj: 7.6.5
sock n: 7.9.3
soft adj: 6.5.1.5, 6.5.1.8, 7.10.1
soldier n: 7.1.10, 7.6.7
sole n: 7.10.1
some adj and adv: 5.6.12.1, 6.4.2, 6.8.2
somebody pron: 6.8.2
someone pron: 6.8.2
something pron: 5.5.10, 5.5.11.1, 5.6.12, 6.8.2
sometimes adv: 6.3.17, 6.3.19, 6.8.2
somewhere adv: 6.2.1, 6.8.2
song n: 7.4.3
soon adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.11
sorry adj: 5.2.24.4, 5.2.51, 5.2.57, 5.6.1.1, 5.6.2.3, 5.3.12.2, 5.5.3.2
sort n: 5.6.12.1, 7.1.14
sound n: 6.5.1.5
soup n: 7.10.1
sour adj: 6.5.1.6
south n and adv: 6.2.1, 6.2.5
Spanish adj: 7.13.1
spare adj: 7.3.1, 7.4.1
speak vb: 5.6.11.1, 6.6.2, 7.13.1
specialist n: 7.7.5
speed vb: 7.5.3
spell vb: 5.6.7, 5.6.15, 7.1.1
spend vb: 7.9.6
spinach n: 7.10.1
spoon n: 7.9.5
sport n: 7.4.2, 7.4.7
spring n: 6.3.2
spy n: 7.4.6, 7.6.7
square n and adj: 6.5.1.1, 7.1.2
stadium n: 7.4.7
stair n: 7.2.2
stamp n: 7.4.2, 7.6.3
stand vb: 5.5.12.3, 6.2.4
star n: 7.4.4
start vb: 5.5.3.5, 6.2.4, 6.3.24, 7.3.2
state n: 7.6.5
statement n: 6.6.2
station n: 7.5.1, 7.6.6, 7.11.9
stay vb: 6.3.26
steal vb: 7.6.6
steering n: 7.11.8
steward(ess) n: 7.5.1
still adj: 6.2.4
still adv: 5.5.24.1, 6.3.12
stir vb: 7.10.1
stocking n: 7.9.3
stomach n: 7.7.1
stop n: 7.5.1
stop vb: 6.2.4, 6.3.25, 7.3.1, 7.5.3
store n: 7.9.1
storm n: 7.14.1
story n: 7.4.6
straight adj and adv: 6.2.5
strange adj: 6.5.2.12
stranger n: 7.6.1
strawberry n: 7.10.1
street n: 7.1.2, 7.5.3
stress vb: 5.5.8.4.5
strike n and vb: 7.3.2
string n: 7.9.5
strong adj: 6.5.1.8
student n: 7.8.1
study n and vb: 7.3.5, 7.4.6
subject n: 5.5.10.2, 7.8.2
succeed vb: 6.5.10.2, 7.8.2
success n: 6.5.2.8
successful adj: 6.5.2.8
such adj: 6.4.3, 6.8.1.1
suddenly adv: 6.3.27
sugar n: 7.10.1
suit n: 7.9.3
suitcase n: 7.5.6
sum up vb: 5.5.9.1
summer n: 6.3.2
sun n: 7.14.1
sunny n: 7.14.1
sunshine n: 7.14.1
supermarket n: 7.9.1
supper n: 7.3.1, 7.10.1
suppose vb: 5.2.14.2
supposed to adj: 5.2.19.4, 5.2.53.1
sure adj: 5.2.13, 5.2.14, 6.6.1
surname n: 7.1.1
surprise n and vb: 5.2.41, 5.2.43
surprised adj: 5.2.41.6, 5.2.43.3
surprising adj: 5.2.41.2
Swedish adj: 7.13.1
sweet n: 7.10.1
sweet adj: 6.5.1.6
swim vb: 7.4.7

T
[tı:]
table n: 7.2.3
tablet n: 7.7.5
take vb: 6.2.5, 6.3.4
take away vb: 6.2.5, 7.10.2
take off vb: 7.9.3
talk vb: 5.5.20.2.1, 6.6.2, 7.6.2
tall adj: 6.2.8.1
tape n: 7.4.3
tart n: 7.10.1	
taste n and vb: 6.5.1.6
tax n and vb: 7.3.3
taxi n: 7.5.1
tea n: 7.3.1, 7.10.1
teach vb: 7.1.10, 7.8.1
teacher n: 7.1.10, 7.8.1
team n: 7.4.7
telegram n: 7.11.3
telegraph n: 7.11.3
telephone n: 7.1.3, 7.2.5, 7.11.2
television (TV) n: 7.2.6, 7.4.3
tell vb: 5.1.4.2.2, 6.6.2
temperature n: 6.2.8.7, 7.7.4
temple n: 7.1.12
tennis n: 7.4.7
tent n: 7.5.5
terminal n: 7.5.1
terrorism n: 7.6.6
terrorist n: 7.6.6
test n and vb: 7.8.3
than conj: 5.2.27.4, 6.7.4.2
thank vb: 6.6.2
thank you int: 5.2.49, 5.2.50.1, 5.3.11.2, 5.3.12.1, 5.4.4.1.1, 5.4.4.1.2, 5.4.4.3.1, 5.5.20.1
thanks n: 5.2.49.2
that (one) pron: 5.1.1.1, 5.2.45.2
that adj: 5.1.1.3, 6.2.1, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2
that conj: 5.2.3.2, 5.2.13.1.5, 5.2.14, 5.2.39, 5.2.41, 5.2.43.3, 5.2.44.3, 5.2.45.1, 5.2.46.3, 5.2.57, 5.6.5.1, 5.6.13.5
the art: 5.1.1.3, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2
The Hague n: 7.1.2
theatre n: 7.4.4
theft n: 7.6.6
them pron: 5.1.1.2
then adv: 5.5.6.2, 6.3.3, 6.3.9, 6.7.6.5
there adv: 5.2.47.1, 5.5.24.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.2, 6.1.3, 6.2.1
therefore adv: 5.2.11.4
these adj and pron: 5.1.1.1, 5.1.1.2, 6.2.1, 6.8.1.1
they pron: 5.1.1.4
thick adj: 6.2.8.1
thief n: 7.6.6
thin adj: 6.2.8.1, 7.1.15
thing n: 5.5.6.4, 6.8.2
thingumajig n: 5.5.2.2.3
think vb: 5.1.2.2, 5.2.1.6.4, 5.2.7.4, 5.2.2.4.4, 5.2.2.5.2, 5.2.2.4.4, 5.2.3.3, 5.2.11.4, 5.2.13.1.5, 5.2.14.2, 5.2.25.4, 5.2.56.4, 5.5.2.1.3, 5.5.5.3, 5.5.12.1, 6.6.1
third-party adj: 7.7.6
thirst n: 7.7.2
thirsty adj: 7.7.2
this adj and pron: 5.1.1, 5.4.8.2.1, 5.5.21.1.2, 5.5.21.2.2, 6.2.1, 6.3.11, 6.3.12, 6.8.1.1
those adj and pron: 5.1.1.1, 5.1.1.3, 6.2.1, 6.8.1.1
thriller n: 7.4.6
through prep: 6.2.5
throw vb: 7.6.6
thunderstorm n: 7.14.1
ticket n: 7.4.4, 7.5.1
tie vb: 6.5.1.11
tights n: 7.9.3
till prep: 6.3.4, 6.3.25
time n: 6.3.3, 6.3.17, 6.3.22, 7.3.1, 7.4.1
timetable n: 7.5.1
tip n: 7.10.2
tired adj: 7.7.2
to prep: 6.2.5, 6.3.1, 6.7.6.7
toast n: 7.10.1
tobacco n: 7.9.4
tobacconist n: 7.9.1
today n and adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.12
together adv: 6.7.6.1
toilet n: 7.2.2, 7.4.4
tomorrow n and adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.11	on(ne) n: 6.2.8.4
tonight n and adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.11
too adv: 6.4.3, 6.7.6.1, 6.7.6.3
tooth n: 7.7.1
toothbrush n: 7.7.3
toothpaste n: 7.7.3
top n: 7.2.7
tour n: 7.5.4
tourist n: 7.5.1, 7.5.4
towards prep: 6.2.5
towel n: 7.7.3
town n: 7.1.2
tradesman n: 7.1.10
traffic n: 7.5.3
train n: 7.5.1
train vb: 7.8.1
tram n: 7.5.1
translate vb: 7.13.1
translation n: 7.13.1
travel vb: 7.5.1
traveller n: 7.5.1, 7.11.4
tree n: 7.2.8
trip n: 7.5.4
trouble n: 7.11.8
trousers n: 7.9.3
true adj: 5.2.4.1, 6.5.2.7
try vb: 5.5.3.5, 6.5.2.8
try on vb: 7.9.3
turkey n: 7.10.1
turn n: 7.9.1
turn vb: 6.2.5, 6.3.27, 7.5.3
turn off vb: 7.2.5
turn on vb: 7.2.5
tut-tut int: 5.2.55.1	twice adv: 6.3.17
typist n: 7.1.10
tyre n: 7.11.9
U [juː]
ugh! int: 5.2.33.1
ugly adj: 7.1.15
uh-huh int: 5.5.13.3
unable adj: 5.2.17.3
uncle n: 7.1.11
under prep: 6.2.2
underground n and adj: 7.5.1
understand vb: 5.6.1.1, 5.6.14.2, 7.13.1
underwear n: 7.9.3
undressed adj: 7.3.1
unemployment n: 7.3.2
unfortunately adv: 5.3.12.4
ungenerous adj: 7.1.14
unhappy adj: 5.2.30.3
unimportant adj: 6.5.2.11
unintelligent adj: 7.1.14
university n: 7.8.1
unleaded adj: 7.11.9
unpleasant adj: 6.5.1.7, 7.1.14
unsuccessful adj: 6.5.2.8
until prep: 6.3.4, 6.3.25
up adv and prep: 6.2.5
upstairs adv: 7.2.2
us pron: 5.1.1.1
use vb and n: 6.5.2.9
useful adj: 6.5.2.9
useless adj: 6.5.2.9
usually adv: 6.3.17

V [viː]
valley n: 7.2.7
van n: 7.5.2
vanilla n: 7.10.1
veal n: 7.10.1
vegetable adj and n: 7.10.1
very adv: 6.4.3
victim n: 7.6.6
victory n: 7.6.7
video recorder n: 7.4.3
videotape n: 7.4.3
Vienna n: 7.1.2
view n: 5.5.12.2, 7.5.5
village n: 7.1.2
vinegar n: 7.10.1

violin n: 7.4.4
visa n: 7.5.7
visit n and vb: 7.5.4, 7.6.2
vote vb: 7.6.5

W [ˈdʌbljuː]
wages n: 7.3.3
wait vb: 6.3.26, 7.5.3
waiter n: 7.10.2
waiting-room n: 7.5.1
waitress n: 7.10.2
wake up vb: 7.3.1, 7.7.2
walk n and vb: 6.2.4, 7.4.2
walkman n: 7.4.3
wall n: 7.2.2
wallet n: 7.9.3
want vb: 5.2.23, 5.2.24.3, 5.2.35.4, 5.2.36.3, 5.2.36.4, 5.2.37.4
war n: 7.6.7
ward n: 7.7.5
warm adj: 6.2.8.7
wash vb: 6.5.1.13, 7.2.6, 7.3.1, 7.7.3
wash up vb: 7.3.1
washing machine n: 7.2.6
watch n: 7.9.3
watch vb: 6.5.1.4, 7.4.3, 7.4.7
water n: 7.2.5, 7.2.7, 7.10.1
way n: 6.7.3.9
w.c. n: 7.2.2, 7.4.4
we pron: 5.1.1.1
weak adj: 6.5.1.8
weapon n: 7.6.7
wear vb: 7.9.3
weather n: 7.14.1
week n: 6.3.2, 6.3.13, 6.3.17
weekday n: 6.3.17
weekend n: 6.3.2
weekly adj and adv: 6.3.17
weigh vb: 6.2.8.4
weight n: 6.2.8.4
welfare n: 7.6.8
well adj: 5.4.4.1.2, 6.5.1.11, 7.7.2
well adv: 5.2.42.1, 5.4.4.2.1, 5.5.1.3.3, 6.5.2.2, 6.7.3.9, 7.13.1
well done! int: 5.2.54.3, 5.4.10.2
were vb: 5.3.4.4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition and Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>west</td>
<td>n, adj and adv: 6.2.1, 6.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what</td>
<td>pron: 5.1.4.3, 5.2.24.1, 5.5.12.1, 5.5.12.2, 6.8.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td>adv: 5.1.4.2.1, 5.1.5.2.1, 6.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>adv: 5.1.4.2.1, 5.1.5.2.2, 5.5.12.3, 6.2.1, 6.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>adj: 5.1.4.3, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
<td>conj: 6.3.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>pron: 5.1.4.3, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whom</td>
<td>pron: 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whose</td>
<td>adj: 5.1.4.3, 6.8.1.1, 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td>adv: 5.1.4.2.1, 5.1.3.2.5, 5.2.5.1.2, 5.2.28.1, 5.3.1.6, 5.3.1.7, 5.3.4.3, 6.7.6.4, 6.7.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>adj: 6.2.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widow</td>
<td>n: 7.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widowed</td>
<td>adj: 7.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widower</td>
<td>n: 7.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>n: 7.1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>vb: 5.2.9.8, 5.2.10.3, 5.2.25.2, 5.3.13.1, 5.5.2.10, 6.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>vb: 7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>n: 7.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>n: 7.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine</td>
<td>n: 7.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wing</td>
<td>n: 7.6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winter</td>
<td>n: 6.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>n and vb: 5.5.28.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>prep: 6.2.2, 6.7.5.1, 6.7.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without</td>
<td>prep: 6.7.5.1, 6.7.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>witness</td>
<td>n and vb: 7.6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>n: 7.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonder</td>
<td>vb: 5.2.13.3.3, 6.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>adj: 5.2.29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
<td>n: 6.5.1.14, 7.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wool</td>
<td>n: 6.5.1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>n: 7.11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>n: 7.3.1, 7.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>vb: 5.2.36.1, 7.1.10, 7.11.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worker</td>
<td>n: 7.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>working hours</td>
<td>n: 7.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(un)worried</td>
<td>adj: 5.2.46.4, 5.2.48.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>n and vb: 5.2.47.3, 5.2.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worse</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worst</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>(’d) vb: 5.2.24.1, 5.2.24.2, 5.3.3, 5.3.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>n and vb: 7.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrap up</td>
<td>vb: 7.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>vb: 5.6.8.1, 6.6.2, 7.1.1, 7.4.6, 7.6.3, 7.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>n: 7.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>adj: 5.2.2.3, 6.5.2.3, 6.5.2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>[eks]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>[wai]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yard</td>
<td>n: 6.2.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td>n: 6.3.2, 6.5.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>int: 5.1.3.4, 5.1.5.1, 5.2.1.6.1, 5.2.1.6.4, 5.2.2.5.1, 5.2.21.1, 5.3.11.1, 5.5.13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>n and adv: 6.3.3, 6.3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yet</td>
<td>adv: 6.3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pron: 5.1.1.1, 5.3.7.1, 6.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you know</td>
<td>int: 5.6.10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>adj: 6.5.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>adj: 6.7.5.1, 6.8.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours</td>
<td>pron: 6.7.5.1, 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>pron: 6.8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youth</td>
<td>n: 7.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>[zed, American zi:]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zero</td>
<td>n: 6.2.8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zone</td>
<td>n: 7.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoo</td>
<td>n: 7.5.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Open lists

N.B. These categories are 'open' in the sense that we do not try to define a vocabulary for all learners in the areas given. The words a learner needs will depend on circumstances, experience and interests. The examples given in the main text are such as to be likely to be of general use, but learners will need to be able to tell others their own nationality, occupation, etc. even if they are not in the list of examples.

accommodation for travellers 7.5.5 nationalities 7.1.8
animals 7.2.8 occupations 7.1.10
art forms 7.4.6 occupational activities 7.1.10
beverages 7.10.1 parts of the body 7.7.1
books 7.4.6 performers 7.4.4
cities 7.1.2 places for public entertainment 7.4.4
clothes 7.9.3 places of work 7.1.10
countries 7.1.2 plants, trees and flowers 7.2.8
diseases 7.7.4 political parties 7.6.5
education 7.8.1 poultry 7.10.1
fields of interest 7.4.2 public performances 7.4.4
fish 7.10.1 radio and TV programmes 7.4.3
food preparation 7.10.1 relatives 7.1.11
fruit 7.10.1 religions 7.1.12
furniture 7.2.3 road-sign texts 7.5.3
hobbies 7.4.2 rooms 7.2.2
languages 7.13.1 school subjects 7.8.2
meals 7.5.1, 7.10.1 shops 7.9.1
meat 7.10.1 sights and buildings of interest 7.5.4
meat products 7.10.1 sports and games 7.4.7
music 7.4.3 vegetables 7.10.1
musical instruments 7.4.4 vehicles 7.5.2
national currencies 7.9.6
Appendix D  Subject index

Index of language functions and notional categories

In the following index numbers refer to chapters and items or sections. The chapters referred to are 5, 6 and 7. All references beginning with 5 are to language functions, those beginning with 6 to general notions and those beginning with 7 are references to themes or sub-themes.

ability
  enquiring about: 5.2.18
  expressing 5.2.17
  foreign-language 7.13.1
abnormality 6.5.2.12
absence 6.1.2
acceptability 6.5.2.4
accessibility 6.5.1.12
accidents 7.7.4
accommodation
  cost 7.2.4
  residential 7.2.2
  types 7.2.1
  while travelling 7.5.5
action/event relations 6.7.3
address 7.1.2
addressing
  customer or member of general public 5.4.7
  friend 5.4.5
  stranger or acquaintance 5.4.6
adequacy 6.5.2.5
advising
  someone to do something 5.3.4
age 6.5.1.10
agency
  action/event relation 6.7.3.1
agreement/disagreement 5.2.3
denying 2.4
  enquiring about 5.2.3
  expressing 5.2.1, 5.2.2
ailments 7.7.4
amenities 7.2.6
announcing new call

on telephone 5.5.26
  answering 5.1.5
  anteriority 6.3.7
  apology
    accepting 5.2.52
    offering 5.2.51
  appearance
    physical 7.1.15
  approval
    enquiring about 5.2.56
    expressing 5.2.54
  arrangement
    order 6.2.7
  artistic pursuits 7.4.6
asking 5.1.4
  for clarification 5.6.6
  for confirmation of text 5.6.4
  for confirmation of understanding 5.6.5
  for person or extension on telephone 5.5.22
  for repetition of sentence 5.6.2
  for repetition of word or phrase 5.6.3
  for something to be written down 5.6.8
  if one has been heard or understood on telephone 5.5.24
  if one has been understood 5.6.14
  someone for something 5.3.14
  someone's opinion 5.5.12
  someone to be silent 5.5.15
  someone to change the theme 5.5.11
  someone to speak more slowly 5.6.11
  someone to spell something 5.6.7
someone to wait, on telephone 5.5.23
assistance
appealing for, in communication repair 5.6.10
offering 5.3.9
requesting 5.3.8
attention
attracting 5.4.1
attitudes, expressing and finding out 5.2
factual: agreement 5.2.1–14
factual: modality 5.2.15–22
emotional 5.2.29–57
volitional 5.2.23–28
audibility 6.5.1.5
availability 6.1.3
bank 7.11.4
bedclothes 7.2.3
benefactive
action/event relation 6.7.3.5
birth
date and place 7.1.4
body
parts of 7.7.1
body care 7.7
capacity 6.5.2.10
causative
action/event relation 6.7.3.6
cause 6.7.6.4
certainty
enquiring about degrees of 5.2.14
expressing degrees of 5.2.13
cessation 6.3.25
change
transition 6.3.27
character 7.1.14
cinema 7.4.4
clarification
asking for 5.6.6
clanness 6.5.1.13
climate 7.14.1
closing
conversation 5.5.19, 5.5.20
letter 5.5.28
clothes 7.9.3
club membership 7.6.4
colour 6.5.1.9
comfort
personal 7.7.2
communication repair 5.6
condition
logical relation 6.7.6.8
physical 6.5.1.11
congratulating 5.4.10
conjunction
logical relation 6.7.6.1
continuity 6.3.18
correspondence
letter writing 7.6.3
similarity 6.7.4.2
countries, entering or leaving 7.5.7
crime 7.6.6
daily life 7.3
dative
action/event relation 6.7.3.3
deciding on courses of action 5.3
defining 5.1
degree 6.4.3
deixis
definite, anaphoric 6.8.1.2
definite, non-anaphoric 6.8.1.1
indefinite 6.8.2
delay 6.3.15
denying 5.2.4
describing 5.1.2
desirability 6.5.2.6
desires, see wants
difficulty 6.5.2.13
dimension 6.2.8
diplomatic services 7.11.6
directing
someone to do something 5.3.7
direction 6.2.5
disagreement
  enquiring about 5.2.3
  expressing 5.2.2
disappointment
  expressing 5.2.45
disapproval
  enquiring about 5.2.56
  expressing 5.2.55
discourse, structuring 5.5
closing conversation 5.5.20
  closing letter 5.5.28
  indicating one is coming to an end 5.5.19
letter writing 5.5.27-28
opening conversation 5.5.1
opening letter 5.5.27
opening on telephone 5.5.21
showing one is following what is said 5.5.13
showing one is following what is said on telephone 5.5.25
television conversation 5.5.21-26
disjunction
  logical relation 6.7.6.2
dislikes
  enquiring about 5.2.34
  expressing 5.2.33
displeasure
  enquiring about 5.2.31
  expressing 5.2.30
disposition 7.1.14
dissatisfaction
  enquiring about 5.2.37
  expressing 5.2.36
distance 6.2.3
documents
  travel 7.5.8
drinking out 7.10.2
drinks 7.10.1
duration 6.3.4
earliness 6.3.5
eating and drinking out 7.10.2
education 7.8
effect 6.7.6.5
emotional expressions 5.2.29-57
emphasising 5.5.8
encouraging
  someone to continue 5.5.18
  someone to do something 5.3.6
entertainment 7.4
enumerating 5.5.6
environment 7.2
equality 6.7.4.1
evaluative qualities 6.5.2
event/action relations 6.7.3
exclusion 6.7.6.3
exemplifying 5.5.7
exhibitions 7.4.5
existence 6.1.1-4
expression 6.6.2
facility 6.5.2.13
factive
  action/event relation 6.7.3.2
family 7.1.11
fashion 7.9.3
fauna 7.1.2.8
fear
  enquiring about 5.2.48
  expressing 5.2.46
flora 7.2.8
focusing 6.7.6.9
food(stuffs) 7.10.1
food and drink 7.10
forgetting
  enquiring about 5.2.8
  expressing 5.2.7
free time 7.4
frequency 6.3.17
fullness 6.5.1.16
furniture 7.2.3
future reference 6.3.11
garage 7.11.8
genuineness 6.5.1.15
giving over the floor 5.5.16
government 7.6.5
gratitude
  expressing 5.2.49
  reacting to expression of 5.2.50
greeting
  replying to 5.4.4
  someone 5.4.2
happiness, see pleasure
health 7.7
hearing 6.5.1.5
help, see assistance
hesitating
  looking for words 5.5.2
hobbies 7.4.2
holidays 7.5.4
home life 7.2, 7.3.1
hope
  expressing 5.2.44
house 7.2
household articles 7.9.5
humidity 6.5.1.3
hygiene 7.7.3

identification
  personal 7.1
identifying 5.1.1
ignorance
  expressing ignorance of a word or
    expression 5.6.9
importance 6.5.2.11
inability, see ability
inadequacy 6.5.2.5
incapacity 6.5.2.10
inclusion 6.7.6.3
income 7.3.3
incorrectness 6.5.2.7
indifference
  expressing 5.2.39
inequality 6.7.4.1
information seeking and imparting
  5.1-5
instructing
  someone to do something 5.3.7
instrumental
  action/event relation 6.7.3.4
insurance 7.7.6
intellectual pursuits 7.4.6
intentions
  enquiring about 5.2.26
    expressing 5.2.25
interest
  enquiring about 5.2.40
  enquiring about lack of 5.2.40
    expressing 5.2.38
    expressing lack of 5.2.39
interests 7.4.2
intermittence 6.3.19
interrupting 5.5.14
introducing
  a person 5.4.8
  reacting to 5.4.9
  a theme 5.5.4
inutility 6.5.2.9
invitations 7.6.2
  accepting 5.3.11
  declining 5.3.12
  enquiring about acceptance 5.3.13
  extending/offering 5.3.10
justice 7.6.6
knowing/knowledge
  enquiring about 5.2.6
  remembering/forgetting 5.2.7-8
  stating 5.2.5
language 7.13
lateness 6.3.6
leave taking 5.4.12
leisure 7.4.1
length 6.2.8.2
letter writing 5.5.27-28
life, daily
  at home 7.3.1
  at work 7.3.2
liking
  enquiring about 5.2.34
  expressing 5.2.32
location 6.2.1
logical relations 6.7.6
luggage 7.5.6
manner 6.7.3.9
marital status 7.1.7
material 6.5.1.14
means 6.7.3.9
medical services 7.7.5
meeting
  someone 5.4.3
moral obligation, expressing 5.2.53
motion 6.2.4
museums 7.4.5
name 7.1.1
narrating 5.1.2
nationality 7.1.8
necessity
  enquiring about 5.2.12
  expressing or denying 5.2.11
non-availability 6.1.3
non-existence 6.1.1
non-occurrence 6.1.4
non-understanding
  signalling 5.6.1
normality 6.5.2.12
number 6.4.1

objective
  action/event relation 6.7.3.2
obligation
  enquiring about 5.2.16
  expressing 5.2.15
  moral, expressing 5.2.53
occupation 7.1.10
occurrence 6.1.4
offer
  accepting 5.3.11
  declining 5.3.12
  enquiring about acceptance 5.3.13
opening
  conversation 5.5.1
  letter 5.5.27
  on telephone 5.5.21
opinion
  asking someone 5.5.12
  expressing 5.5.5
origin
  direction 6.2.6
  locality 7.1.9
ownership 6.7.5.1

paraphrasing 5.6.12
past reference 6.3.13
peace
  war and peace 7.6.7
permanence 6.3.20
permission
  enquiring about 5.2.20
  expressing 5.2.19
  granting 5.2.21
  withholding 5.2.22

petrol station 7.11.9
physical appearances 7.1.15
physical qualities 6.5.1
places 7.1.2
pleasure
  enquiring about 5.2.31
  expressing 5.2.29
police 7.11.5
politics 7.6.5
position
  relative 6.2.2
possession 6.7.5.1
possessive relations 6.7.5
post
  postal services 7.11.1
posteriority 6.3.8
preference
  enquiring about 5.2.28
  expressing 5.2.27
presence 6.1.2
present reference 6.3.12
press 7.4.8
pressure 6.2.8.3
prices 6.5.2.1, 7.9.6
private transport 7.5.2
probability
  enquiring about 5.2.10
  expressing 5.2.9
proposing a toast 5.4.11
prospects 7.3.5
public transport 7.5.1
purpose 6.7.6.7
pursuits
  intellectual and artistic 7.4.6

qualifications
  educational 7.8.3
quality 6.5
  evaluative 6.5.2.1-13
  physical 6.5.1.1-16
quantity 6.4.1-3
question answering 5.1.5

radio 7.4.3
reason
  logical relation 6.7.6.6
reassurance
  giving 5.2.47
**SUBJECT INDEX**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reflection 6.6.1</th>
<th>Social affairs 7.6.8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Region 7.2.7</td>
<td>Socialising 5.4.1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regret</td>
<td>Space 6.2.1-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing 5.2.57</td>
<td>Speed 6.3.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relations 6.7</td>
<td>Spelling 5.6.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action/event 6.7.3.1-9</td>
<td>Asking someone to spell something 5.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrastive 6.7.4.1-2</td>
<td>Sports 7.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical 6.7.6.1-9</td>
<td>Stability 6.3.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive 6.7.5.1</td>
<td>Suggestion 5.3.1-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial 6.7.1</td>
<td>Subjects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal 6.7.2</td>
<td>In education 7.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With other people 7.6</td>
<td>Successfulness 6.5.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship 7.6.1</td>
<td>Suggesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion 7.1.13</td>
<td>Agreeing to 5.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remembering</td>
<td>A course of action 5.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enquiring about 5.2.8</td>
<td>Summarising 5.5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stating 5.2.7</td>
<td>Supplying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeating</td>
<td>A word or expression 5.6.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What one has said 5.6.13</td>
<td>Surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetition</td>
<td>Enquiring about 5.2.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asking for 5.6.2-3</td>
<td>Expressing 5.2.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetitiousness 6.3.22</td>
<td>Expressing lack of 5.2.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting 5.1.2</td>
<td>Sympathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requesting</td>
<td>Expressing 5.2.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone to do something 5.3.3</td>
<td>Taste 6.5.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rightness 6.5.2.3</td>
<td>Telegraph 7.11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooms 7.2.2</td>
<td>Telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satisfaction</td>
<td>Discourse functions 5.5.21-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enquiring about 5.2.37</td>
<td>Number 7.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing 5.2.35</td>
<td>Service 7.11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schooling 7.8.1</td>
<td>Television 7.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence 6.3.9</td>
<td>Temperature 6.2.8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
<td>Temporariness 6.3.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplomatic 7.11.6</td>
<td>Texture 6.5.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical 7.7.5</td>
<td>Thanking. see gratitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public 7.11</td>
<td>Theatre 7.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential 7.2.5</td>
<td>Theme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex 7.1.6</td>
<td>Asking someone to change the theme 5.5.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape 6.5.1.1</td>
<td>Changing 5.5.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shopping 7.9</td>
<td>Introducing 5.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shopping facilities 7.9.1</td>
<td>Time 6.3.1-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sight 6.5.1.4</td>
<td>Divisions of 6.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simultaneousness 6.3.10</td>
<td>Indications of 6.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size 6.2.8.1</td>
<td>Points of 6.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smell 6.5.1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking 7.9.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
reference to 6.3.11-14
reference without time focus 6.3.14
traffic 7.5.3
transition 6.3.27
transport
  private 7.5.2
  public 7.5.1
travel 7.5
class travel documents 7.5.8
TV 7.4.3

unacceptability 6.5.2.4
uncertainty, see certainty
understanding foreign languages 7.13.1
undesirability 6.5.2.6
unhappiness, see displeasure
unimportance 6.5.2.11
uniqueness 6.3.23

unsuccessfulness 6.5.2.8
utility 6.5.2.9

value 6.5.2.1
visibility 6.5.1.4
volume 6.2.8.5

wants
  enquiring about 5.2.24
  expressing 5.2.23
war and peace 7.6.7
warning 5.3.5
weather 7.14.1
weight 6.2.8.4
wish
  indicating wish to continue 5.5.17
work, daily life at 7.3.2
worry
  enquiring about 5.2.48
wrongness 6.5.2.3